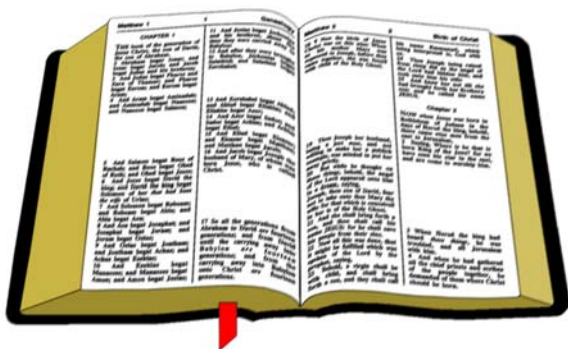


# MISSING BIBLE VERSES



## Missing from Common Beliefs

By Frederick C. Rauch

They are missing from common beliefs,  
because they are **ignored**.

If you have a problem seeing the text in this book, or have to slide the page back and forth to read it, I have a special larger text edition you may download. If you do not have any problems seeing the text in the book you are now reading, the book you are now reading is your better choice.

**Download the Large Text PDF Edition at:**

**<https://seeketh.com/narrow.html>**

My book was made to be freely reproduced and given to everyone. Email a copy to your friends. The more it is reproduced and given to others, the happier I am. You may put a copy of my book on your moral *(moral by God's standards)* website in order to give copies of my book to other people; however, they must be free non-commercial non-Profit downloads. Read the legal details at the end of this book; they are very mild.



## Missing Bible Verses

### Missing from Common Beliefs

by Frederick C. Rauch

Copyright © 2004 – 2022 by Frederick C. Rauch  
and its licensors. All Rights reserved.

The Scriptures are from the Authorized King James Version Bible.  
(the rights in which are vested in the Crown)

I give my permission to print on paper non-commercial non-profit copies of this book, in whole or in part, as long as they are printed without any alterations, and the copyright page (*this page*) is fastened to everything that is printed. **For the best results, print from the Free PDF files currently at** <https://seeketh.com/> Read the legal details at the end of this book; they are very mild.

**Complacency** We never want to feel we have completed our learning and growing in God, feeling like we have it all together, because complacency stops us from growing forward in God. Learning and growing in God is a never-ending effort. If we stop growing forward in God, we will begin to slide backward.

This book challenges us to prayerfully re-examine our beliefs with the context of the entire Bible. We might surprise ourselves by discovering Bible verses that appear to contradict our beliefs. We might find we are holding to a handful of verses that appear to support our beliefs, while we are missing or avoiding other verses that seem to contradict them. Truth is found when we prayerfully study all the Bible verses collectively with God's assistance.

Read and learn how to search out any Biblical belief or question with the context of the whole Bible.

**When you do not know what to do** God does exist, and he hears and takes care of the people who truly love him from the bottom of their heart. Anytime you do not know what to do, get down on your knees, lift your hands up towards God, and love and praise him out loud from the uttermost depth of your heart (*may be done in private*). When genuine love and praise is being given to God, he takes notice of it, and he will lead you in the right direction. However, if you do not follow him, your efforts will be in vain. You need to read in the New Testament daily, because your deep love for God will stir you to find and do all of God's will.

**Did you know we can actually meet God?** If we present ourselves to God, praising him with a right heart, God will come to us; we can actually meet God. However, God is a living Spirit, not a physical being, unless he chooses to be in the form of a physical being. Meeting God is different than meeting a man; you will feel him all over you; he is invisible. However, when you feel him, you will recognize him, and you will know the meeting is real. Through personal experiences and eye witnessing, I found the main way to meet God is through striving to love and obey him, and speaking praises directly to him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart (*may be done in private*). We can contact God through praise; it gets God's attention. A right heart will cause us to do all the other things of drawing ourselves closer to Jesus Christ.

## How do we gain a closer relationship with God?

God is seeking for people who worship him in spirit and in truth. When we genuinely worship God in spirit and in truth, from the depth of our heart, we will get God's attention. God only accepts the words we speak from the depth of our heart.

When we get God's attention, we need

to ask him for his help  
in giving ourselves  
completely to him,

and tell him we want

to love him more and more. We should always praise God before we pray. When we worship him, we should praise him out loud from the depth of our heart (*may be done in private*). We also need to prayerfully read from the New Testament every day.



Some people think they did too much sinning; they think they are too filthy to give themselves to God. They cannot imagine God forgiving them, because they did so many evil things. In reality, if they sincerely love and want God, the door of salvation is open

to them. People who are forgiven much (*big-time*) often love God much (*big-time*). Sometimes the vilest sinners, who are genuinely converted, become the best Christians.

**“whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little”**

*Luke 7:47*

“47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, the same loveth little.”

Some people see the Christian road as a road too hard to travel; they believe it is past their capability. This would be true if they had to do it all by themselves, but a person who genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ is not alone. After Acts 2:38 is fully and genuinely obeyed, he will have God dwelling inside him. God dwelling inside him gives him the needed strength and ability to travel the Christian road.

## Preface

Many churches/people ignore Bible verses that do not agree with their beliefs. Most Christians believe this is true, while they are looking at other churches. We need to take a good look at ourselves, because we are probably doing the same thing.

Christianity quickly gets off-base when people start to ignore Bible verses. We end up with Christianity out of context. I call the ignored verses *The Missing Bible Verses*.

Some people do not want to accept certain Bible verses. Many of them will contend against a large amount of Biblical evidence, striving to convince themselves and others, with little or no Biblical support, that we may dismiss/ignore certain Bible verses. Frequently this is done by saying "These verses do not apply to us today. They were for the people who lived back in the days of the Bible."

Some preachers pretend to tear pages out of their Bible, while they are teaching this problem. They teach that other churches ignore important Bible verses. What they do not realize, they are often doing the same thing with different Bible verses.

Did you ever play a game where someone is told a story, and he tells it to another person, and that person tells it to somebody else, and on and on? When the last person tells the story out loud, it is miles off-base, totally different from the original story. I believe the same thing can happen over the years as people retell their beliefs; the beliefs gradually get off-base. We need to continually recheck our beliefs with the whole Bible.

We can get to the point we believe our beliefs are so correct that we will fight with all our might to defend them. Being in this state of mind, we could start using our beliefs as the standard, believing Bible verses are not interpreted correctly if they are in conflict with our beliefs. We do not want to be found translating and manipulating the Bible to be in harmony with our beliefs. Are we defending our doctrines/beliefs/traditions to the point we are fighting/deflecting Scriptures?

**The authority of the Bible always overrides beliefs, doctrines, and traditions.**

The Bible is to determine our beliefs. We error when we let our beliefs shape the interpretation of the Bible.

Some people say “What was good enough for my parents and grandparents is good enough for me”.

**“For unto whomsoever much is given,  
of him shall be much required”**

*Luke 12:48*

“48 But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few *stripes*. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required: and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more.”

If God gives us more knowledge and resources to obtain a better understanding than he gave to our parents and grandparents, more is required of us. If we think we can avoid higher requirements by remaining Biblically uneducated, we are wrong; this is ignorance by choice, a result of a weak heart for God.

We have computers and access to all kinds of Bible reference books. Christians in the past would have craved for the Christian academic resources that are available to us.

Many beliefs contain missing Bible verses. In this book we will study St. Peter’s instructions for joining Jesus Christ. St. Peter gave these instructions to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church, and all of the apostles stood with St. Peter as he gave them. Mary, Jesus’ mother, was present too. They are the first/main instructions for joining Jesus Christ. So why are they being ignored, and not being prominently taught by many churches?

As we read this book, the *Missing Bible Verses* will become apparent when we say to ourselves “I never saw that in the Bible”.

## You will learn as you read this book.

How does the world get so many different beliefs  
from the same Bible?

---

Why did St. Paul re-baptize people  
who were already baptized  
with the baptism of John the Baptist?  
He re-baptized them in the name of the “**Lord Jesus**”.

---

Do you know the baptism words (*baptize, baptism, Baptist, etc.*)  
were not translated into English?

These Greek words were spelled with the English alphabet,  
instead of translating them into English?

I believe they left these words in Greek,  
so people would not comprehend their meaning.

---

We have Matthew 28:19,  
but everything in the Bible, including baptisms,  
was always performed in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

Why can't we find anything in the Bible, including baptisms,  
being performed using the descriptive names of God:  
Father, Son, and Holy Ghost?

---

Do you know the Bible repeatedly ties baptism  
to the remission of sins?

How can baptism remit sins?

---

Why do some people believe  
we need to speak in tongues in order to go to Heaven?



# Table of Contents Outline

I have placed the chapters in an outline arrangement. The outline arrangement shows the relationship the chapters have with each other. Take a moment and look over the outline.

- 1 Let us prayerfully recheck our beliefs
- 2 Bits and pieces of Bible basics
- 3 How does the world get so many different beliefs from the same Bible?
- 4 How to locate Information in the Bible, and how to study it.
- 5 Joining Jesus Christ
  - I Hear / Believe / Repent
  - II Water Baptism
    - A The Great Commission
    - B The first day of the Church
    - C Water Baptism for the remission of sins
    - D Why was Jesus baptized?
    - E Baptism is immersion

F Water Baptism, Further than infant sprinkling

G Once we believe and repent, we need to be baptized immediately.

H Being Baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”

a The Bible declares there is only one God. *(We are not omitting anyone when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, because God is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.)*

J The thief on the cross was not baptized

K 1 Corinthians 1:17

III Spiritual baptism    Being born again  
Receiving the Holy Ghost  
Speaking in tongues

AA Speaking in tongues

aa Diversities of speaking in tongues

bb The Spiritual gift of tongues

cc Decently and in order

dd When will speaking in tongues cease?

## BB Feeling God's presence

**CC** Tarrying for the Holy Ghost is drawing nigh to God, and completely giving ourselves to him.

**6** Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ,  
accepting him as our Lord and Saviour

## 7 Sin

## 8 Things do not seem to make sense

## 9 Doctrinal Boxes

## 10 Missing Bible Verses



**Wherever we are in God,  
we need to grow and do better.**

## Definitions

Words and phrases are a big problem when talking about the things of God. The same words and phrases paint different pictures in the minds of different people. I will explain what I mean when I use the following words:



**The Church** (*capital C*) The Church is all the Christians, collectively, who genuinely have the Holy Spirit (*Holy Ghost, Almighty God*) dwelling inside them. The Church is not a particular church organization; the Church is all the genuine Christians together: the people. The Church is all the genuine Christians/believers functioning as one, being guided by Jesus Christ through the Holy Ghost. The genuine Church always strives to obey Jesus Christ.

**Day of Pentecost** Pentecost (*Feast of Weeks*) is an annual feast of the Jews. The day of Pentecost which is referred to in this book is the one recorded in Acts chapter 2.

**Dispensation** A period of time in which the correct path of following, obeying, and interacting with God remains unchanged.

**EXAMPLE** During the Dispensation of the Law, following God was through obeying the Old Testament Law to the letter. In the Dispensation of Grace, we follow/obey Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart. If our heart is right, we will strive to obey all of Christ's instructions. Some things change between dispensations, and some things remain the same.

**Father** A descriptive name for God.

**Father, Son, and Holy Ghost** The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one and the same God/Deity, who we call God.

**First day of the Church** The day Jesus Christ activated his Church by giving his followers the power (the Holy Ghost). Since then, Jesus Christ communicates and directs his followers (*the Church*) through the Holy Ghost. The first day of the Church was the day of Pentecost: Acts chapter 2.

## **Genuine Christian** A genuine Holy Ghost filled person:

- who always desires and strives to live and do righteously/Godly;
- who believes Jesus Christ is the Son of God;
- who has accepted Jesus Christ as their **Lord** (*as the one they obey*) and Saviour;
- who has repented, who has whole heartedly decided to turn from following sin to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness;
- who has been baptized into Christ;
- who has received the gift of the Holy Ghost. Almighty God himself, as the Holy Spirit, is constantly dwelling inside him: to teach him; to lead him; to guide him; to comfort him; etc.
- who is following the leading of the Spirit of God.



Being human, Christians still stumble and blunder; we do not totally understand all the ways of God. However, the Holy Ghost will be continually teaching us God's ways, and we will grow deeper into perfection as we learn and grow in God. The Holy Ghost will be continually upgrading and comforting us the rest of our current lives.

**God** The one who created and controls everything. The one who is perfectly good at all times. The one who is above everyone and everything. He is the God of Abraham. He is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

**God/Deity** The words *God* and *Deity* have the same meaning. However, the word *God* is often used as a name for God, and the word *Deity* is often used to declare someone is a god. Declaring there is only one God is declaring there is only one who is Deity.

I often put both words together: God/Deity. I do this to hopefully prevent what I call playing with words.

**Heaven** The place where genuine Christians will live with God forever; a place without evil, pain, crying, sorrow, death; etc.

**Holy Ghost** A descriptive name for God. A form in which God presents himself and communicates with mankind. The Holy Ghost is God's Spirit (*the Father's Spirit*). We also call the Holy Ghost "*Holy Spirit*" and "*Spirit of God*".

The words ***Ghost*** and ***Spirit*** mean the same thing.  
Some people say "**Holy Ghost**"; others say "**Holy Spirit**".

**In the flesh** Living in the flesh is the opposite of living in the Spirit of God. It is following the ways of the world. It is seeking and following the desires of our flesh (*our self*) to the point we are ignoring (*neglecting to accept and obey*) God's instructions/commandments.

**Jesus Christ** He is the Son of God. He is both God and mankind. The Father dwells in/inside of him, and he is full of the Holy Ghost; thus he is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, existing together in the body of Christ. He is the God of Abraham in the flesh.

**Living in sin** Living in sin is the opposite of *Living in God*.

**Manifestations** Forms in which God presents himself.

**Son of Man** The human being side of Jesus Christ.

**Receiving the Holy Ghost** is our personal burning bush encounter with God. We actually meet God. God enters us, and remains constantly inside us, to guide and comfort us. God is a Spirit, so meeting him is different than meeting a man.

**The way/ways of the world** They are the ways of most people: living and doing as one pleases, while being unconcerned about disobeying God; not honoring God as God; living a life that is contrary to God; not striving to obey Christ's commandments.

In the Old Testament, the people were to obey the written law of Moses to the letter of the law. Under grace, our current time period, we are to obey Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart. Our genuine love for God compels us to obey Jesus Christ. Wilfully continuing to disobey Jesus Christ reveals a heart that is not properly connected to God yet.

## **The first four chapters, and Chapter I, teach us general things.**

**They help prepare us for studying the rest of this book.**

- 1.** They reveal how misleading beliefs can be born, and how they can appear correct.
- 2.** They teach us how to study the Bible, and how to locate the verses we need by subject.
- 3.** They urge us to examine ourselves:
  - Do we genuinely have God first place in our heart and lives?
  - Are we traveling with Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way to Heaven?
  - Are we trying to earn our way into Heaven?
  - Are we deceiving ourselves, believing we can be okay with God while we are ignoring Christ's commandments?
  - Are we interpreting the Bible accurately?
    - When we study the Bible, are we honestly searching for truth, or are we accepting and fashioning an interpretation of the Bible which fits our desired beliefs?
    - Are we zealously holding to our current beliefs to the point we are rejecting/deflecting Bible verses that seem to disagree with our beliefs? Are we holding to our beliefs no matter what other Bible verses say?

**The first number of chapters may appear to be first grade-ish and repetitious to Bible scholars. However, they are needed for an authentic personal examination. As we read the statements being made, we need to genuinely ask our self, “Is that me?”**



In this book, I am explaining what I believe is the truth. I challenge you to get a Bible, an **exhaustive** concordance, and prayerfully study the things in this book, honestly and without prejudging. Anyone can say anything, including priests/preachers. We need to get in the habit of checking out beliefs with the whole Bible.

## **Reiteration / The book of Repetition**

This book uses repetition, and sometimes the things being explained are so basic it seems to be a first grade Bible study. The book is written for all kinds of people; from people who do not know where to find the Old and New Testaments, to Bible scholars. There are things in this book for everyone. I believe many Bible scholars will see things in the Bible they never noticed before; these things are scattered throughout the simple teachings and the repetition.

Bible educated people may find the Bible ABC's and the repetition annoying. But there are people who need to learn some of the basics of the Bible in order to understand the things inside this book.

We need to realize everyone does not know and understand the same things we know and understand. Some people can grasp and retain things with a once over; other people need the repetition to stay focused.

A single Bible verse can contain multiple points of understanding. When we study topics containing multiple sub-topics, we tend to reuse the same verses in the sub-topics; this makes repetition.

Sometimes when we study a topic, certain things need to be in the front of our mind, so they get repeated. There are vital things we need to remember, so they get repeated too.

Do not let the repetition irritate you; you are not required to read the repetition, but be sure to note how the verses and things are tied to the current subject. Sometimes it seems as if the same verse is repeated six times within twenty pages. If you know the verse, you do not have to read it six times, just note it is part of an explanation. If you endure the repetition and read everything, I believe you will acquire and retain a richer understanding. Repetition helps our minds remember.



Studying deeper into the Bible, taking a fresh look at what the Bible is saying, is expanding our understanding of God.

Prayerfully learn what other people believe the Bible is saying.

God is real. He reveals himself, and the truth, to people who genuinely love him from the depth of their heart. Our genuine love for God causes us to obey Christ's commandments, and causes us to love and worship him in spirit and in truth. When we have given ourselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, we will have the Spirit of Almighty God (*the Spirit that is in Christ*) dwelling inside us. If our heart is right in God, the Spirit of God will reveal what is from God, and which beliefs are man-made. However, we still need to prayerfully study the Bible daily, striving to find and do God's will.

## Let us prayerfully recheck our beliefs

We always need to prayerfully learn and grow in Bible knowledge; we do not know everything. This book encourages us to get outside the verses that support our beliefs, and prayerfully study the complete Bible. We have a tendency to travel the same Bible verses, repeatedly, until our Biblical focus is frozen to them. This can make it difficult for us to see and accept Bible verses that can produce questions about our beliefs. We must not mentally repress, block, or mentally discard, Scriptures that can appear to oppose our beliefs, because it is possible some of our beliefs are not squarely on base. This is the reason we need to prayerfully, seriously, and intensely, study the whole Bible, including all the verses that seem contrary to our beliefs. If we desire truth, we must stay inside the Holy Bible. The entire Bible is truth; errors are mis-interpretations.

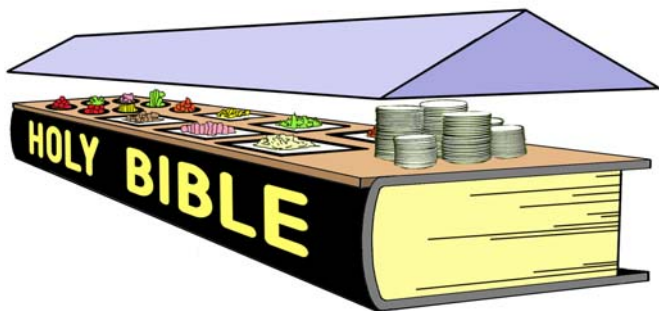
What are the Missing Bible Verses? They are the verses that are missing from our beliefs: verses we do not know or comprehend; verses we choose to ignore, because they produce questions about our beliefs; verses we avoid because we do not like the subject; etc.

As we read the Bible, we find many verses which can appear to disagree with each other. Some Bible verses seem to point our understanding to the left, and other verses appear to point our understanding to the right. I believe all these verses will point in the same direction, when we totally understand them.

People will often accept beliefs which are based on a few Bible verses, and mixed with human reasoning. When they come across Scriptures that seem to oppose their beliefs, they do not know what to think about them. Often they will ponder, trying to understand how these Scriptures fit their beliefs, not realizing it is their beliefs which need to be changed to fit the Scriptures. Many people ignore, or try to explain away, Scriptures that appear contrary to their beliefs. People who exult the Scriptures that support a belief, and ignore Scriptures that seem to disagree with it, could have an out-of-context belief.

The Bible interpreted correctly is truth. We cannot mold the truth to our liking, exclude pieces of it, or add pieces to it, and still have truth. Truth only comes one way: **as is**.

Some common beliefs lack proper Biblical support, and many church going people do not realize it. These beliefs can get in our way, making it harder for us to fit Biblical truths together. Like a puzzle, some genuine Biblical truths do not seem to fit into the picture, because the incorrect beliefs, which we have already inserted, are in the way.



People have a tendency to treat the Bible like a buffet table. They take large portions of the things they desire, maybe a little health food, and ignore the rest. This is a way to produce beliefs which are out of context.

If we want truth, we must be willing to prayerfully and honestly study ALL the Scriptures before God on equal ground. We need to go beyond the verses we use and discover the rest of the Bible.

If we truly love God, we will be serious about serving him. God will honor our prayerful toil to find and follow the truth. The amount of effort we put forth, to find and do God's will, reveals the amount of love we have for God; it reveals how important he is to us.

One of the best ways to get people to understand what is truth is to have them prayerfully search out Biblical beliefs in the Bible. Anytime we are in the Bible with a right heart, we will learn and grow in God.

Many pieces of Biblical understanding will only come to us as a direct gift from God. We need to earnestly pray for the correct understanding.

If we are serious about God, we will choose our church by Biblical correctness, and not by convenience, family tradition, popularity, etc.

If we need to learn how to locate Bible verses by subject/topic, chapter 4 will get us started.

If we love God,  
we will spend time prayerfully studying the Bible.

**“Study to shew thyself approved unto God”**

*2 Timothy 2:15*

“15 Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.”

**“Search the scriptures”**

*John 5:39*

“39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.”

**“holy scriptures,**

**which are able to make thee wise unto salvation”**

*2 Timothy 3:15*

“15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.”

**“thou shalt meditate therein day and night,  
that thou mayest observe to do according to all  
that is written therein”**

*Joshua 1:8*

“8 This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.”

**“Blessed is the man”**

**“his delight is in the law of the LORD;  
and in his law doth he meditate day and night”**

*Psalms 1:1–3*

“1 ¶ Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.

2 But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.

3 And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.”

**“With my whole heart have I sought thee:”**

**“Thy word have I hid in mine heart,  
that I might not sin against thee”**

*Psalms 119:10–12*

“10 ¶ With my whole heart have I sought thee: O let me not wander from thy commandments.

11 ¶ Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.

12 ¶ Blessed *art* thou, O LORD: teach me thy statutes.”

**“Thou through thy commandments  
hast made me wiser”**

*Psalms 119:97–104*

“97 ¶ MEM. O how love I thy law! it *is* my meditation all the day.

98 ¶ Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser than mine enemies: for they *are* ever with me.

99 I have more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies *are* my meditation.

100 I understand more than the ancients, because I keep thy precepts.

101 ¶ I have refrained my feet from every evil way, that I might keep thy word.

102 ¶ I have not departed from thy judgments: for thou hast taught me.

103 ¶ How sweet are thy words unto my taste! *yea, sweeter* than honey to my mouth!

104 Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way.”

**Wisdom (*pure, from God*) is the subject (*me*) of the following:**

**“Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not”**

*Proverbs 8:32–36*

“32 ¶ Now therefore hearken unto me, O ye children: for blessed *are they that* keep my ways.

33 Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not.

34 Blessed *is* the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.

35 For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the LORD.

36 But he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul: all they that hate me love death.”

Why do churches need to revise their doctrines, if they Biblically learn their doctrines are not perfectly correct?

**ANSWER** Souls could be in jeopardy.

## 2

### Bits and pieces of Bible basics

When people die, we always hear statements like the following: “They are in a better place”; “They are in Heaven now”; “Their suffering is over”; etc. However, the Bible says only a few will go to Heaven, and many will go to the eternal lake of fire.

This book says we need to wake-up and examine ourselves, and our beliefs, to make sure we are genuinely one of the few people who are following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way to Heaven. To be able to genuinely follow Jesus Christ, we need God’s Spirit dwelling inside us, leading us (*See Chapter III*).

We are to do more than seek God. We are to seek him with all our heart, striving to enter into God’s salvation. Jesus Christ is God’s salvation. **“Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.”**

**“few there be that find it”**

*Matthew 7:13–14*

“13 Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide *is* the gate, and broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat:

14 Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.”

**“Strive to enter in”**

*Luke 13:23–25*

“23 ¶ Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them,

24 Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.

25 When once the master of the house is risen up, and hath shut to the door, and ye begin to stand without, and to knock at the door, saying, Lord, Lord, open unto us; and he shall answer and say unto you, I know you not whence ye are:”

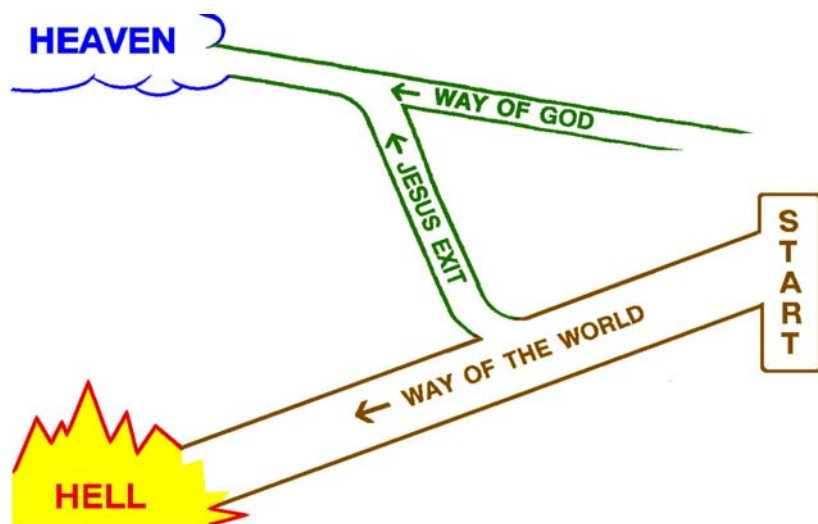
**“he is a rewarder of them  
that diligently seek him”**

*Hebrews 11:6*

“6 But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.”

**The way/ways of the world** They are the ways of most people: living and doing as one pleases, while being unconcerned about disobeying God; not honoring God as God; living a life that is contrary to God; not striving to obey Christ's commandments.

Our sins separated us from God; we were all traveling to the lake of fire. When Christ died on the cross, he paid the penalty for our sins. He built us an exit, a way to escape the eternal lake of fire. This exit will allow us to exit the broad way of the world, and enter the strait and narrow way of God.



To exit the broad way of the world, and enter the strait and narrow way of God, we need to go through the only door, the only way, which is Jesus Christ.

If we are attempting to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness without exiting the broad way of the world, we are attempting the impossible. We cannot travel North and South at the same time.

If we are attempting to travel with Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, while we continue to look back at the ways of the world, having a desire in our heart for the sinful things we exited to follow Christ, we will stumble and fall.

### **“I am the way”**

*John 14:6*

“6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.”

### **“I am the door”**

*John 10:9*

“9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.”

### **“He that entereth not by the door”**

*John 10:1*

“1 ¶ Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber.”

**God will accept us AS IS (sinful),  
but he will not leave us in that condition.**

When we give our sinful selves to Jesus Christ, we are entering God's Spiritual bathtub. God starts cleansing our heart, our life, our mind, etc. We are not accepted into God's family because we made ourselves clean/righteous. On our own without God, we cannot make ourselves clean/righteous.

When we truly believe on Jesus Christ, accepting him as our Lord and Saviour, being baptized into Christ, we are placing ourselves into God's hands knowing he will forgive us and clean-up our lives. He will transport us from living sinfully to living righteously. Part of this cleansing occurs immediately/shortly, and part of the cleansing continues the rest of our life. Our job is to cooperate with God. If we are not being cleansed by God, we are not in his saving hands; we need to receive the Holy Ghost.



Some people believe following Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness is an almost impossible road to travel. This is not true when we have the Spirit of God inside us, leading us.

How diligently we strive to find and travel the strait and narrow way of God reveals how much we love and desire God.



## How hard are we striving to find and do the will of God?



Are we really aiming for the obedience bull's-eye, or are we merely aiming for anywhere on the target? How hard we strive reveals how much we love and desire God.

**Let us give God our all.**

**“And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy”**

*Mark 12:30*

“30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment.”

**Do we love Jesus Christ?**

*John 14:21*

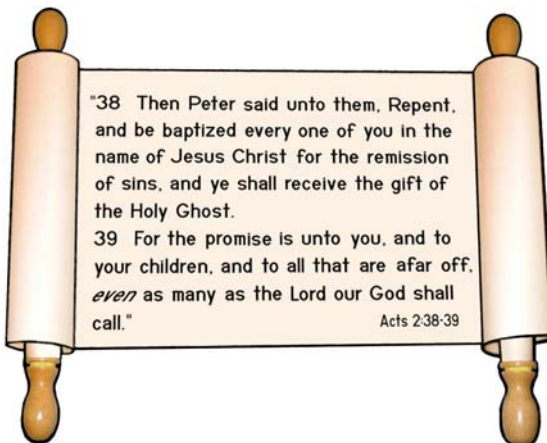
“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

**The widow gave her all**

*Luke 21:3–4*

“3 And he said, Of a truth I say unto you, that this poor widow hath cast in more than they all:

4 For all these have of their abundance cast in unto the offerings of God: but she of her penury hath cast in all the living that she had.”



## **Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ is absolutely the most important thing in our life.**

If we genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, we will be saved by God's grace. However, we need to follow the Bible's definition of what it means to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ. We do not want to conclude we believe when we have not met the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*). Genuine belief always starts the dominos falling forward in the way of Jesus Christ.

**Genuine belief always  
starts the dominos  
falling forward.**



Belief → Repentance → Water Baptism → Receiving the Holy Ghost → Loving God with our ALL → Having God first place in our life → Striving to obey Jesus Christ's Commandments, from the depth of our heart → Growing in all the things of God → Doing good works → And more.

No matter how hard we work, how good we are, or how much good we get accomplished in our lifetime, we cannot earn or help earn our way into Heaven. Only the grace of God can save us. Thank you Jesus for Calvary and grace.

**“For by grace are ye saved through faith”**

*Ephesians 2:8*

“8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:”

## **How do we accept the Grace of God?**

We accept God's grace by believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting Christ as our personal **Lord** and Saviour. Since we have accepted Jesus Christ as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*), we will follow his instructions.

- Jesus Christ tells us to Repent (*to exit sin, and follow him*).
- Jesus Christ instructs us to be Baptized in water.
- He baptizes all genuine believers with the Holy Ghost.

Being baptized (*saturated*) with the Holy Ghost (*God's Spirit*) is Almighty God himself entering a genuine believer to continually dwell inside him (24/7): to lead him; to teach him; to comfort him; to mold him into the ways of God; to give him strength and boldness; etc. His desires are changed, because God is dwelling inside him. Sinful things now appear disgusting, and he desires the things that are good, pure, holy, and righteous.

The Holy Ghost dwelling inside us results with us continually growing into the righteous ways of God: obedience to God; good works; morality; Godliness; holiness; righteousness; love; gentleness; patience; etc. These things have no power to help us earn our way into Heaven; rather, they are gifts from God. They are a result of God living inside us, molding us. The absence of growth into these attributes of God reveals the absence of God's Spirit. The absence of God's Spirit reveals we have not properly believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.

A person without the Spirit of God dwelling inside him lacks Spiritual sight, drive, ability, knowledge, and power, to truly grow into Godly righteousness.



Sometimes God's Spirit will stir someone to give himself to Jesus Christ; many churches call this "being under conviction". If the person rejects (*pushes off*) the conviction, he will soon stop feeling the Spirit of God.

When someone receives the Spirit of God (*the Holy Ghost*), he will have God continuously living inside him. Just as the person who is under conviction to give himself to Jesus Christ, genuine Christians are continually convicted, motivated, taught, stirred, led, given strength, etc., by the Spirit of God; this is part of the process of molding us into righteousness. Genuine Christians are God's workmanship, because God is the one who is molding and shaping the Godly attributes into us, as we cooperate with him.

**“For we are his workmanship,  
created in Christ Jesus unto good works”**

*Ephesians 2:10*

“10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.”

- Following the leading of the Spirit of God is what makes a Christian, or a church, genuine.
- When someone is following the leading of the Spirit of God, Spiritual fruit is produced in him.
- We are to identify who is a genuine Christian by the Spiritual fruit in his/her life.

**Fruit of the Spirit** When the Spirit of God is constantly dwelling inside us, he is continually molding and shaping us into righteousness. The result of God's Spirit molding and shaping us into righteousness is called the fruit of the Spirit, because God's Spirit is the one who is producing the fruit in us. Every genuine Christian grows into the fruit of the Spirit.

Some fruit of the Spirit is as follows: obedience to God; Godly love; righteousness; morality; holiness; Godliness; truthfulness; faith in God; good works; longsuffering; gentleness; meekness; peace; joy; temperance; goodness; patience; etc.

We think we know what is good and righteous, but sometimes we are off-base. What is good and righteous is determined by God's definitions, not our definitions. We need to remember this when we are looking for the fruit of God's Spirit in people.

**“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”



**“Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”**

*Romans 8:9*

“9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

**“But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you”**

*Romans 8:11*

“11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.”

## **The Bible Informs us**

- 1.** No matter how hard we work, how good we are, or how much good we get accomplished in our lifetime, we cannot EARN or HELP EARN our way into Heaven.
- 2.** All genuine Christians/believers obey Christ's commandments, as God is molding us into righteousness. Our deep love for God compels us to obey Christ's commandments, including the ones called "WORKS".

## **We make Jesus Christ our Lord by willfully obeying his instructions/commandments.**

*Luke 6:46*

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?"

**Christians are sometimes called Christ's sheep,  
and all Christ's sheep follow (obey) him.**

*John 10:27*

"27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:"

**"unto all them that obey him"**

*Hebrews 5:9*

"9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;"

**"but he that doeth the will of my Father"**

*Matthew 7:21*

"21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven."

If we are being led by the Spirit of God, we will see Christ's commandments as pure and holy instructions guiding us in the direction we are longing to go.

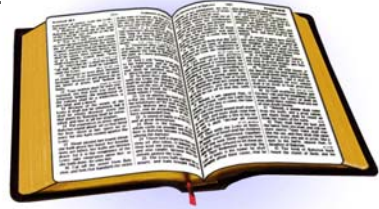
If we decline to obey Christ's commandments, we are rejecting Christ as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*). Christ's commandments are mostly about loving and caring.

We cannot love God and ignore his commandments. If you have a computer with a Bible program on it, search for the places in the Bible where the words *love* and *commandments* are used in the same verse. You will find loving God and striving to obey his commandments are one and the same.

## God will Use Fear

Sometimes God uses fear to stir people. He will open their eyes about Heaven and the eternal lake of fire. He lets them understand Christ's shed blood at Calvary offers them a way to escape the eternal lake of fire. When people realize it is all factual/real, they will run to give themselves to Jesus Christ.

When we personally get to know Jesus Christ, our fear of God turns into an enormous love for him. We will understand God used fear to awaken us to the truth, because he loves us. He does not want us to spend eternity burning in the eternal lake of fire.



**“taking vengeance on them that know not God,  
and that obey not the gospel”**

*2 Thessalonians 1:8–9*

“8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:

9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;”

**“into the fire that never shall be quenched”**

*Mark 9:43–44*

“43 And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched:

44 Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.”

**“there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth”**

*Matthew 13:41–42*

“41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;

42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.”

**“Fear him, which after he hath killed  
hath power to cast into hell”**

*Luke 12:5*

“5 But I will forewarn you whom ye shall fear: Fear him, which after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell; yea, I say unto you, Fear him.”

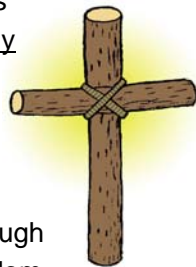
Some people say it does not matter if a Christian lives in sin, because God will always forgive him. But the Bible informs us, a person who is living in sin is not a Christian, because it is impossible to live in sin while being led by the Spirit of God. We cannot travel North and South at the same time.

**Genuine Christian** A follower of Jesus Christ. A person who has God's Spirit dwelling inside him. Someone who is following the leading of God's Spirit, obeying Jesus Christ.

**Living in sin** is the opposite of living in God: Living and doing as one pleases; not striving to obey Christ's commandments; being unconcerned about disobeying God; living a life which is contrary to God; not honoring God as God.

Genuine Christians do not live/dwell in the ways of sin, but we are not perfect; sometimes we mess up and do something stupid. Genuine Christians diligently strive not to sin as we are being molded upward into righteousness by the Spirit of God.

Fortunately, God will always forgive Christians who confess their sins to him, repent, and diligently strive not to do them again. Non-Christians will be forgiven if they accept Jesus Christ as their **Lord** (as the one they obey) and Saviour; they need to obey Acts 2:38.



When we are saved by the Grace of God through Christ's shed blood, we gain freedom/liberty: freedom from the chains which held us in bondage to sin; freedom from the letter of the Old Testament Law. This freedom/liberty allows us to serve and obey Jesus Christ freely. It is not a freedom/liberty that lightens our obligation to obey God.

To exit a life of Living in Sin, we need God's help. God will help us if we have a genuine desire in our heart to have Jesus Christ as our **Lord**, desiring to follow him up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

**Bondage to sin** When sin is controlling the person.

## **The first day of the Church was the day of Pentecost.**

**It was seven weeks after Christ's Resurrection (Acts 2).**

When Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he handed the work of preaching the Gospel, and everything which goes along with it, over to the Church. But being humans, they did not have what it takes to do the job; they needed more than human intellect.

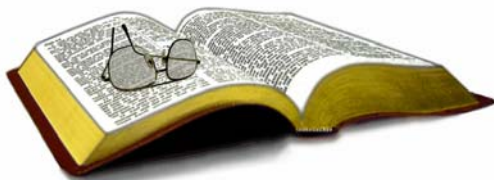
A few days later on the day of Pentecost, God started to enter all genuine Christians. He entered and remained constantly inside them: to lead them; to teach them; to guide them; etc. Now with God constantly dwelling inside them, the genuine Christians had what it takes to do their job. The day of Pentecost was the first day of the Church, because this was the day the Church was launched and began to function through the leading of the Holy Ghost.

### **Who is the Church?**

The Church is all the genuine Christians, collectively, who have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them, leading them.

Genuine Christians have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them, thus the power of Almighty God lives inside every genuine Christian. The power of God (*the Holy Ghost, God's Spirit*) is not for Church leaders only, but for every genuine Christian.

The Spirit of God communicates with every genuine born again Christian: molding, teaching, convicting, instructing, comforting, guiding, and encouraging them in the ways of Jesus Christ.



The Spirit of God also uses the Bible, preachers, and teachers, to teach and guide us. We need them to properly mature in God.

The Holy Bible was written under the anointing of the Spirit of God. When properly interpreted, the Bible and the leading of the Spirit of God are always in agreement.



On the first day of the Church, the day Jesus Christ anointed his followers with power (*the Holy Ghost*), St. Peter preached. When the people heard him preach, they were pricked in their hearts; they wanted to join Jesus Christ. They asked St. Peter and the other apostles “**what shall we do?**”. They were given the instructions for joining Jesus Christ: Acts 2:38.

Acts 2:38 is the first instructions of the Church for joining Jesus Christ. They were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church. ALL the apostles stood with St. Peter (*Acts 2:14*) as he gave these instructions. Mary, the mother of Jesus Christ, was present too. These instructions remain unchanged; they are our instructions for joining Jesus Christ.

*Acts 2:37–38*

“37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

**Repentance** is the unbending decision to leave sin to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

**Baptism** is being immersed in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of our sins. It is our ceremony for joining, entering, converting to, putting on, Jesus Christ. However, joining Christ involves more than the baptism ceremony. When things are genuine, we come out of the water with our sins remitted, joined to Jesus Christ.

**Receiving the Holy Ghost** is our personal burning bush encounter with God. It is God entering us, to continually live inside us, to lead us up the path of righteousness.

We might think *repent* means to express sorrow over the sins we have committed, asking God to forgive us. *Repent* means more than saying we are sorry. Repentance is a solid decision to exit the ways of the world to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. If we do not truly purpose in our heart to stop sinning to follow/obey Jesus Christ, we did not repent. After joining Jesus Christ we must continue to follow him as we are being led by the Spirit of God.

## Are we attending the right church?

The Bible instructs Christians to regularly assemble as a group, to gather for church services.

We may be attending our parent's church, or our friend's church. We may have chosen our church for convenience and what it has to offer us. We may be very happy and content with our church, but if it is not teaching/leading us into all the genuine ways of God, are we really going to make it into Heaven?

Is our church really giving us what we need?

If going to Heaven is our goal, we need to choose our church based on its Biblical correctness and completeness: a church that teaches Biblical truth, even when it is stepping on our toes; a church which does not ignore or brush off Scriptures that may appear to be in opposition to its beliefs.

Many people find the truth about sin and its consequences very offensive. If it is preached, some of them could be offended and stop coming to church. Many pastors preach the softer parts of the Bible to keep people content and coming to church. They might preach things that dwell on love, forgiveness, helping others, etc., and avoid the harsh parts of the Bible which talk about sin, God's wrath, and the consequences of sin. If the pastor willfully declines to teach the truth about sin and its consequences, he is in massive trouble with God (*See Ezekiel 33:2–9*).

The role of the Church is to preach the truth about Jesus Christ for the purpose of salvation and Spiritual growth. Preaching the truth includes preaching about sin. We need to learn about God's love, and his wrath, to stay in Biblical context.

Some pastors treat their pastorship as a job; they do what the denomination tells them to do. They will only preach what the denomination allows them to preach. Preachers are normally required by their denomination to proclaim the denomination's beliefs, and to interpret the Bible to fit these beliefs.

What will a pastor do if he finds some of his denomination's beliefs are in opposition to the Bible? A pastor could lose his job, and maybe his retirement, if he starts proclaiming things contrary to his denomination's beliefs. An authentic preacher who is following the Spirit of God will preach the full truth, even if there are consequences.

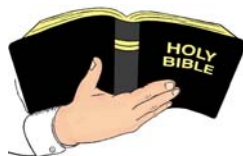
It seems each church has its own set of beliefs; one church's beliefs are in opposition to the other church's beliefs. Thus we know all the beliefs cannot be correct.

Many churches' beliefs are maintained by holding to a special set of selected Bible verses. Often we can find verses that appear to disagree with some of their beliefs. Instead of studying how these verses fit the verses they use for their doctrines, many churches/pastors give little or no attention to them. They do not take them seriously, and brush them off. This is one reason why we need to prayerfully and diligently read and study our Bible daily, searching for the correct understandings. First we need to read the New Testament about a dozen times; then, we need to read the whole Bible from cover to cover. We need to see what the entire Bible says.

If all churches proclaimed the absolute truth,  
all churches would preach the  
same doctrines/beliefs, but they do not.

We need God's help to find the truth. Much of the truth about God only comes as a gift from God. God gives gifts of understanding to people who truly love him, people who desire to know his will for the purpose of obeying him. We need to deeply love God and sincerely pray for Godly understanding.

If we want accuracy, we must stay inside the Bible. If we stay inside the Bible, prayerfully striving to find the truth, and study with a right heart, God will give us the needed understanding. We need to prayerfully examine



all the facts in all the verses; our eternity could hang in the balance.

If we truly want unbiased truth, we need to make sure we do not take sides. Too many of us decide what is correct before we prayerfully study the Bible; then, we end up reading the Bible with a slant towards our beliefs. It can become difficult for us to study the Bible without a slant, because our beliefs and their supporting Scriptures are welded into us. We need to remember all Bible verses are truth collectively, just not the verses we use to support our beliefs.

Once we know how to use the Bible, and can locate Scriptures by topic, we need to check our own beliefs. We need to prayerfully study the verses we know with the rest of the Bible. If our churches' beliefs and doctrines are Biblically correct, honest, prayerful, and unbiased research will verify them.

**BEWARE** If we get outside the Bible, our imagination can lead us to invent desirable beliefs with our intellect. If we do not use the facts (*the Bible*), we will be like the man who looked at the moon and said "I believe it is a huge golf ball". We cannot afford to decide what is truth with our imagination.

If we are serious about going to Heaven, we need to be in a church and under a pastor who will tell us the truth, even if the truth is very offensive to us. We do not want a pastor who will pat us on our back and tell us everything is okay with our soul, when everything is not okay. We need to know the genuine plan of Salvation, and how God wants us to live. We need to be taught which things are sin, so we can repent of them.

Some people/churches do not want to accept some genuine Bible doctrines, so they ignore them. They will go to a preacher /church who will teach them soft and pleasant things: a preacher /church whose doctrines often include human reasoning, which are sometimes fables. Generally these people/churches reject, write off, and ignore every Bible doctrine they do not want to accept. When we are ignoring genuine Bible doctrines, we are ignoring God.

**"they will not endure sound doctrine"**

**"they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears"**

**"they shall turn away *their* ears from the truth"**

*2 Timothy 4:3-4*

"3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears;

4 And they shall turn away *their* ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables."

Christians need to believe and embrace all of the Bible. We find soft verses in the Bible about forgiveness, faith, love, mercy, etc. The Bible also contains hard verses which warn and rebuke us, and teach us about the hard consequences of sin. We need all the Bible verses.

### **Ask God for Understanding**

*James 1:5*

“5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.”

*Luke 11:9–10*

“9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

10 For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.”

*(Chapter 4 will teach us how to locate verses by topic.)*

**May God bless you as you sincerely, painstakingly,  
and prayerfully search the Bible for truth!**



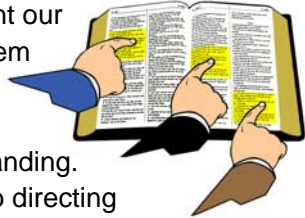
# 3

We have many different kinds of churches.  
Each church is claiming to show us the way of salvation.  
Why are not all churches in agreement?  
Why are there so many different beliefs?

## How does the world get so many different beliefs from the same Bible?

I find the main academic reason is churches/people emphasize the verses that appear to support their beliefs; then, they give insignificant consideration to the verses that seem to diminish or appear contrary to their beliefs.

I find some Bible verses seem to point our understanding to the left, while others seem to point our understanding to the right. I see this appearance of dual pointing as curbs on the edge of the road of understanding.



If I get too far to the right, I run into a curb directing me to the left. If I get too far to the left, I run into a curb directing me to the right. If I ignore the curbs, I find myself off the road out in left field, or out in right field.

**BEWARE** If an individual desires the left, he can highlight Scriptures that appear to point to the left, while avoiding Scriptures that seem to point to the right. This person can go and preach a left sided message using his specially selected Scriptures. If we are looking for truth, we need to consider the entire Bible.

When someone challenges our Biblical beliefs, normally Bible verses will flash into our head reassuring us we are correct and the challenger is out in left field. The verses that flashed through our head are probably a set of selected verses which we have been taught repeatedly. The entire Bible did not flash through our head. Let us take some time and see what Scriptures the challenger may have brought to the surface. We need to remember Bible is Bible. Our preferred Bible verses do not cross out other verses. We must not be afraid to prayerfully consider, with an open mind, all the verses of the Bible.

The Bible is full of statements that can appear to disagree with each other. One verse may seem to point our understanding to the right, another verse may appear to point our understanding to the left. Let us look at a few examples.

### **First Example**

The first example of Scriptures appearing to point in more than one direction is on the question **“Can Christians sin?”** It involves the next four Scriptures.

#### **We have sin**

*1 John 1:7–10*

“7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.

9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.”

#### **“Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not”**

*1 John 3:5–10*

“5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.

7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous.

8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.”

#### **“Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin”**

*John 8:34*

“34 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.”

“18 ¶ We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.”

The purpose of looking at these four Scriptures is to show and warn you, Bible verses can be selectively chosen and interpreted to proclaim a desired belief.

If someone wants to believe we can be right with God without exiting the path of sin, he could hold high the first Scripture and ignore the rest. If someone wants to believe genuine Christians are as sinless as God, he could hold to the last three Scriptures and ignore the first. If we want truth, we need to understand all the verses are truth collectively. Anytime we ignore what a Bible verse is saying, we are ignoring truth.

The above Scriptures seem to be saying opposite things:

**(1)** Christians sin; **(2)** Christians do not sin. My studies inform me they are talking about two different categories of people and sinning.

**1.** A Spirit filled born again Christian, who is growing and following Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, longs and strives to obey God in all things. Even though he earnestly strives not to sin,

sometimes he comes up short of perfection

(*messes up, sins*), because he is human. If he sins, he confesses it to God, repents, and earnestly strives with everything that is in him not to sin again.



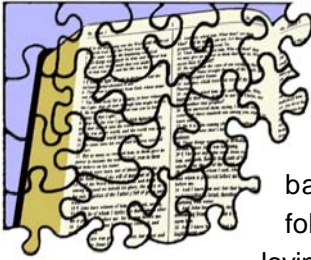
1 John 1:7–10 applies here. These verses are addressed to people who are walking in the light: walking in God.

**2.** A person who is living in sin does whatever pleases him. He is not concerned about disobeying God (*sinning*). If someone has the Spirit of God dwelling inside him, it is impossible for him to live this way. 1 John 3:5–10, John 8:34, and 1 John 5:18, applies here.



## Second Example

Putting Biblical understanding together is similar to working on a puzzle. We get a piece of Biblical understanding here, and we connect it to a piece of Biblical understanding there. If we put a lot



of pieces together, we see a lot of the picture. If we only use a few pieces, we only see a little part of the picture. We find many pieces to the salvation and Christian living picture: Christ's blood;

believing on the Lord Jesus Christ; baptism; obedience to God; having and following the Spirit of God; righteousness;

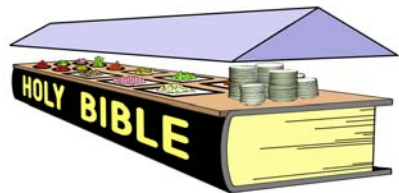
loving the truth; peace and holiness; enduring to the end; the name of "Jesus Christ"; by grace, not works; etc. If we want the whole picture, we need all the pieces.

The second example of Scriptures appearing to point in more than one direction is on the question:

**Are we saved by simply believing  
on the Lord Jesus Christ?**

**Or are there more things  
we need to do and obey?**

A good example, of what many churches/people do with the Bible, is to compare the Bible to a buffet table. People take large portions of the things they desire, maybe a little health food, and ignore the rest. This is a way to produce beliefs which are out of Biblical context.



As you read the next 39 Scriptures, imagine how many different beliefs could be constructed about salvation, if people use the Bible like a buffet table, choosing and ignoring Scriptures according to their preference.

## Calling

*Romans 10:13*

“13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.”

## Doing

*Matthew 7:21*

“21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”

## Obeying

*Hebrews 5:9*

“9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;”

**“if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,  
he is none of his.”**

*Romans 8:9*

“9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

## Falsely calling Jesus “Lord”

*Luke 6:46*

“46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?”

## Following

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

## Not by our righteousness

*Titus 3:5*

“5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;”

## Our righteousness

*Matthew 5:20*

“20 For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.”

## Obeying

*Acts 5:32*

“32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.”

## Belief

*John 3:14–16*

“14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

## Baptism

*1 Peter 3:21*

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:”

## The name of “Jesus Christ”

*Acts 4:12*

“12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

## Good Fruit

*Matthew 3:10*

“10 And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.”

## Belief / Baptism

*Mark 16:16*

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

## Belief / Baptism

*Acts 16:31–33*

“31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

## Grace / Not Works

*Ephesians 2:8–9*

“8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God:

9 Not of works, lest any man should boast.”

## Enduring to the end

Matthew 24:13

“13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.”

**“Be not deceived:”** *(The unrighteous are not saved.*

*However, they can give themselves to Jesus Christ, and be saved and made righteous in him.)*

1 Corinthians 6:9–11

“9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,

10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.

11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.”

## Confess and Believe

Romans 10:9

“9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.”

## By the Gospel

1 Corinthians 15:1–2

“1 ¶ Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.”

## Peace and Holiness

Hebrews 12:14

“14 Follow peace with all *men*, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord:”

## Abide in Christ

John 15:6

“6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast *them* into the fire, and they are burned.”

## Fear God / Righteousness

Acts 10:34–35

“34 ¶ Then Peter opened *his* mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons:

35 But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.”

## Hear / Believe

*John 5:24*

“24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.”

## Doing Evil (*living in sin*) reveals we are still an unbeliever.

*Galatians 5:19–21*

“19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,

20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,

21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.”

## Obedience

*1 John 2:3–5*

“3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.

4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.

5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him.”

## Christ's blood

*Romans 5:9*

“9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.”

## Belief

*John 3:36*

“36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.”

## Convert / Be as children

*Matthew 18:3*

“3 And said, Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.”

## Serving

*Colossians 3:24*

“24 Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.”

## Death & Life of Christ

Romans 5:10

“10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.”

## Christ is the door

John 10:9

“9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.”

## Grace

Acts 15:11

“11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they.”

## Love truth

2 Thessalonians 2:10

“10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.”

## What we speak

James 1:26

“26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridled not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man’s religion *is* vain.”

## Hope

Romans 8:24

“24 For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for?”

## Repent (“Repent” means to exit sin and obey God.)

Luke 13:3

“3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.”

## Repent / Baptism / Receive the Holy Ghost

Acts 2:37–38

“37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

Imagine someone specially selecting salvation verses that contain only the things he prefers, and brushing the other verses aside. This person could use his set of specially selected Bible verses to preach an out-of-context message.

**THE QUESTION** Are we saved simply by believing on the Lord Jesus Christ? Or are there more things we need to do and obey?

**THE ANSWER** Genuine belief causes us to deeply love God. Our love for God compels us to obey Christ. There are things we need to do and obey, but they have nothing to do with earning our way to heaven; they are a part of believing on Christ. If our love for Christ does not compel us to obey Christ's commandments, something is wrong with our belief.



The Bible plainly declares we are saved by the grace of God; salvation is a gift. We cannot EARN or HELP EARN our way into Heaven. God gives grace to everyone who genuinely believes on the Lord Jesus Christ. However, our belief needs to fit the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*) and Savior.

Jesus Christ instructs us to repent (*an unbending decision to stop sinning to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness*), and to be baptized in water (*the ceremony part of joining Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins*).

If we genuinely repent, and are baptized into Christ, God will place the Holy Ghost inside us. The Holy Ghost will be continuously molding us into a person who obeys God, a person who does good and lives righteously. Obeying Christ's commandments, doing good works, living righteously, etc., is not about earning our way into Heaven; they are the results of having the Holy Ghost dwelling inside us, molding us into righteousness. If we have the Holy Ghost dwelling inside of us, we will have these results.

Christ's commandments are about loving God, and loving and caring for each other. They are about doing the right thing.

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, doing the will of God, and obeying Christ's commandments are all welded together. We are either striving to obey Christ's commandments to the best of our ability, or we are ignoring them. If we willfully continue choosing to ignore Christ's commandments, we are not a genuine believer.

**“If a man love me, he will keep my words”**

*John 14:23*

“23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.”

**“they follow me”**

*John 10:27*

“27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:”

*1 John 2:4*

“4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.”

**“even as he is pure”**

*1 John 3:3*

“3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.”

**“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God”**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

The appearance of Bible verses pointing our understanding in more than one direction is not confined to the Scriptures noted in this book. They appear to be plentiful in the Bible. We need to prayerfully consider the entire Bible to make sure our beliefs are not out of context. All the pieces of the Bible will fit together when we have the correct understanding.

Different churches hold different interpretations for the same Bible verses. This results with many different beliefs. Since some of the beliefs oppose other beliefs, some of the beliefs are incorrect. This is one reason why we need to sincerely pray for God’s assistance as we diligently strive to find and understand the truth of the Bible.





## 4

### How to locate information in the Bible, and how to study it.

Studying the Bible is not comparable to studying other books. To understand the heart and core of the Bible, God must give us the understanding as a gift.

If we truly love God, and diligently seek him from the depth of our heart, God will start giving us understanding. God will allow us to understand enough of the Bible to realize we need to accept Jesus Christ as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour. After we have obeyed Acts 2:38, including receiving the Holy Ghost, Almighty God will be dwelling inside us. God as the Holy Ghost will cause us to start understanding the heart and core of the Bible.

It is possible for us to be highly educated in Bible Colleges and still not be able to comprehend some of the basic things of God. We can be an uneducated Holy Ghost filled person, or child, with a right heart towards God who understands the things of God, because God has placed the understanding inside us. Academic study without the Holy Ghost results with an incomplete understanding.

**God gives understanding to people with a right heart,  
and he hides it from others.**

**“*hast hid these things from the wise*”**

**“*hast revealed them unto babes*”**

*Luke 10:21–23*

“21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

22 All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*.

23 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said privately, Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things that ye see:”

**“he cannot see”** (*Look up the word “see”, for John 3:3, in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.*) *John 3:3*

“3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

**Why did Jesus Christ teach in parables?** *Matthew 13:10–16*

“10 And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables?

11 He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.

12 For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath.

13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.

14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:

15 For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

16 But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.”

**“for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in Heaven”** *Matthew 16:15–17*

“15 He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am?

16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.”

**“he will guide you into all truth”** *John 16:13*

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

**“and he that loveth me” “and will manifest myself to him”** *John 14:21*

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

**“If any man will do his will,  
he shall know of the doctrine,  
whether it be of God”**

*John 7:17*

“17 If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or *whether* I speak of myself.”

**“Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you”**

*James 4:8*

“8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, ye sinners; and purify *your* hearts, ye double minded.”

**“If a man love me” “and make our abode with him”**

*John 14:23*

“23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.”

**“them that diligently seek him”**

*Hebrews 11:6*

“6 But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.”

We need to prepare for studying the Bible with prayer and worship. We should get down on our knees, raise our hands high toward God, and praise him out loud from the depth of our heart (*this may be done in private*). If we genuinely praise/worship God in Spirit and in truth, God will come to us. God is seeking true worshippers.

**“for the Father seeketh such to worship him”**

*John 4:23–24*

“23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.

24 God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth.”

## Checking our beliefs

When I went to school, I was taught to check my mathematics. I was taught how to check my multiplication using subtraction, addition, and division. If I figured a multiplication problem without checking it, I might have the wrong answer. If I checked my answer by division, addition, and subtraction, and it agreed every time, it was considered I proved my answer correct.

**LIKewise** We need to check our understanding of individual Bible verses. We need to find all the verses on the subject, then compare them to each other. If all the verses agree, it is considered to be the correct understanding.

We need to know how to use the Bible. If we have a question, we need to know how and where to find the answer. We do not have time to read the Bible from cover to cover every time we have a question. When we want to understand what the Bible declares about a specific subject, most of the time, we will find the information is scattered throughout the Bible. How can we find all the information and put it together? We have research books to point us to the verses we need, mainly an **exhaustive** concordance.

Words have multiple definitions. Are we using the correct meaning for the words in the Bible? The New Testament was translated from Greek. The Old Testament was translated from Hebrew. The definitions of today's English words may not perfectly parallel the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words. English words slowly change their meaning over the years. We may have to get our New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionaries, and compare the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words before they were translated into English.

I use the King James Version Bible. I was raised on it, and it seems the majority of books for aiding Bible research are keyed to this version. The complaint about the King James Version is its outdated English. However, the more we use it, the more the outdated English becomes familiar. The outdated English results with us looking up more words in a *New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionary*. It is necessary to use these dictionaries for all versions

/translations of the Bible. Even the words in the newer translations of the Bible may not perfectly match the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words. Use these dictionaries when something does not sound right, or when a doctrine/belief is based on a few words, etc. An **exhaustive** concordance with a numbering system can help in matching words to their definitions.

**BEWARE** We have many translations/versions of the Bible. When someone is interpreting the Bible, they can choose words that push the interpretation toward their personal beliefs without realizing it. We need accuracy.

We can locate the same information using a computer with an appropriate Bible program. The main advantage of using a computer is saving time: the time of handling books, and the turning of pages. However, sincere research still involves serious time in prayer and earnest thinking.

### **Basic books we should have**

- An Authorized King James Version Bible
- An **Exhaustive** Concordance with a Greek/Hebrew word numbering system.
- A New Testament Word Study Dictionary, hopefully using the same numbering system.
- An Old Testament Word Study Dictionary, hopefully using the same numbering system.

**The first book** we should have is an Authorized King James Version Bible. It has been the primary protestant English Bible for hundreds of years. Many of the main Bible reference books are keyed to this version.

We need to make sure the Bible maintains the italicized words (*a few words in the Bible, here and there, should be in italic*). These are words which were added to the Bible when they translated it into English. The action of the translators marking these words tells me they were extremely concerned about accuracy.

The Bible is a collection of 66 books, divided into two sections. The first 39 books are the Old Testament. The remaining 27 books are the New Testament.

To properly understand the Bible, we need to understand its basic layout/framework. We need to understand the purpose of each book, and to whom the words were addressed. Etc.

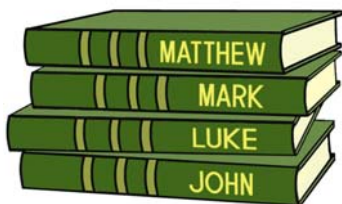
We can find Study Bibles with this information and much more inserted into them. This information is not part of the Scriptures; it is information inserted inside the Bible (*the book*) for convenience. We need to be aware, a good portion of this additional information could be the author's opinions. We do not risk our soul on the additional information being totally correct. It is simply someone's effort to help us understand the Bible.

The Old Testament, for a large part, is information about the Israelites living under the Law. We find information in the Old Testament which points to and identifies Christ. We can obtain much knowledge from the Old Testament, especially about understanding God's feelings, actions, etc. However, newcomers should start by reading the New Testament about a dozen times.

The New Testament is the heart and core of information for people serving God under Grace (*our current time period*).

Only the genuine Bible text,  
as interpreted by the Spirit of God,  
is completely trustworthy.

Christ fulfilled the Law at Calvary. Now with the Law fulfilled, we are living under God's Grace. The New Testament is laid out as follows:



The first four books in the New Testament are biographies of Jesus Christ. These books, for the most part, extend from his birth to his ascension up into heaven. They record his actions and teachings.

After these four books end, at the ascension of Christ, the book "**Acts** of the Apostles" continues to record the events of the Church.





Romans through Jude are letters. They are written instructions which were sent to a church or a Christian. We are actually reading someone's mail. Why? The instructions written to them apply to us.

The last book of the New Testament is "Revelation". We need to read this book even though it is very hard to understand.



The King James Version Bible is considered a top version of the Bible for accuracy, but it is written in old English. The meaning of some words have changed over the years, so I compare the KJV Bible to another word to word translation of the Bible. This helps me find words which the meaning has changed. Then I can look up the words in my Old/New Word Study Dictionaries for a better understanding of the words, to see which words are more accurate.

**The second book** we need is an **exhaustive** concordance. It is the main book for finding things in the Bible. It will be a huge book, because it contains a huge amount of information. Do not be satisfied with partial concordances in Bibles or smaller books; these partial concordances contain only some of the references. They can easily be bias, because someone has to choose which references go into it. An accurate impartial search depends on having all the references, all the pieces. This is why we need an **exhaustive** concordance which contains all the references. We should try to obtain one with large print. It is to our advantage if the concordance has a word numbering system: a number assigned to each word. These numbers can simplify further research.

One purpose of the concordance is to be able to locate Bible verses by subject. If we look up the word *love* in an **exhaustive** concordance, it will give us a list of every place in the Bible where the word *love* is found.

If we want to find all the Bible verses pertaining to a particular subject, we start by making a list of words. If we want to study divorce, we make a list of all the related words that come to our mind: divorce; marriage; etc. Then we locate these words in our

concordance, which gives us lists of Bible verses to consider. While we are reading these verses, we will often find additional words to add to our list.

We might find several variations of a word. If we want to read what the Bible declares about baptism, we will need to study all the verses listed under several forms of the word: baptism; baptisms; Baptist; Baptist's; baptize; baptized; baptizest; baptizing. While reading these verses, we may come across additional words related to baptism: water; wash; remission (*for remission of sins*); etc. Then we need to prayerfully read the verses listed under these words, and prayerfully study them in their context.

Searching the Bible with the aid of an **exhaustive** concordance, not a partial one, is honorable. It does not take sides; it is impartial. An **exhaustive** concordance tells us where the verses are in the Bible; it does not try to interpret them.

We can do the same type of word search on a computer with an appropriate Bible program. However, an **exhaustive** concordance does better in finding all the verses, due to the different spellings and different forms of the words.

**BEWARE** Not everything we read in reference books is factual. We will find a mixture of facts, varied beliefs, opinions, and conclusions.

We need God's guidance, to sense, sort, and check this information, to separate facts from opinions. Let us be sure to prayerfully seek God's guidance with a sincere heart.

**The third book** we should have is a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.

The New Testament was translated from Greek into English. This dictionary explains the meaning of individual Greek words, so we can understand the definition of a Greek word before it was translated into English. Often the definitions of the English words do not perfectly match the definitions of the Greek words.

The Dictionary is written in English, not Greek. The use of this book is simplified if the concordance and dictionary use the same numbering system.

I prefer to use a *New Testament Word Study Dictionary* that lists individual words (*it is more specific*), instead of a dictionary that groups similar words.



**Our fourth book** should be an Old Testament word study dictionary. This is the same type of dictionary, but for the Hebrew words of the Old Testament. The use of this book is simplified if the concordance and dictionary use the same numbering system.

With the Bible and these research books, we are ready to prayerfully study about anything taught in the Bible. Many other books are available to complement our research: Bible Dictionaries; Bible Commentaries; Bible Atlas; Bible Encyclopedias; Theology Dictionaries; and many others. Let us start building our library.



### **Ask God with Faith**

*James 1:5*

“5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.”

Pray, **asking** God to give us an answer. **Seek** in the Scriptures until we find the answer. Keep **knocking** on the door of Spiritual understanding, until the door is open.

*Luke 11:9–10*

“9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

10 For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.”

### **“he will guide you into all truth”**

*John 16:13*

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

We spend all kinds of time learning how to work our computer, or to master a piano, etc. How much time are we willing to put into learning the things of God? Our life has a way of revealing which things are the most important to us. Are we really putting God first?

# Let us be Aware of the following:

## Studying the Bible alone, without God

If we study the Bible without God's assistance, it is totally impossible for us to comprehend the real and deeper meaning of the Scriptures. We must prayerfully enlist God's help, or our studying will be in vain.

## Our heart / Our purpose

God will help us if our heart is in the right place, and we are prayerfully studying for the right reasons. Let our heart's desire be to understand God's word for the purpose of obeying him better.

## Study the Bible in context, and by subject

We need to read in the Bible every day. We need to read the Bible from cover to cover. We also need to study the things of God by individual subjects/topics. We need to always pray and read multiple Scriptures, studying them in their context.

## Misunderstanding what some words mean

Words have various meanings. When we translate one language into another, the meaning of the words may not perfectly parallel each other. Even our English words keep evolving (*their meanings slowly change*).

Cultures of the past were different. We need to understand the meaning of the words at the time they were written.

We need to look up words in our Word Study Dictionaries, and read books on Biblical culture. We need to trust God's Spirit to guide us to the correct understanding.

## Words / Terminology

People/churches often do not receive the same understanding from the same words. If we are not careful, a dispute over a Christian belief can have more to do with terminology than with the belief.

**EXAMPLE** The phrase *living above sin* can mean different things to different people.

Some people understand the phrase *living in sin* as being unconcerned about obeying God, preferring and choosing to sin. They see the phrase *living above sin* as living above *living in sin*.

They see the phrase *living above sin* as a state of being extremely determined to love and obey God: loving God with our all; always striving to obey Christ; preferring and choosing to follow Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness; etc. We may hear them say “All true Christians *live above sin*”. If we would keep listening, we would hear them saying “Christians are not perfect. Christians are human beings who sometimes error, goof, blunder, react incorrectly, make wrong choices, etc.”

Other people see the phrase *living above sin* as having an absolute meaning: to be as sinless as God, forever; to be absolutely 100% perfect. We might find them saying “We cannot *live above sin*; God is the only one who is absolutely perfect”.

Both sides can believe the same thing, yet they can be arguing whether genuine Christians live above sin. Both sides believe true Christians do not willfully choose to continue traveling down the road of sin, because the desire of a genuine Christian’s heart is to obey God. Both sides believe Christians do some stumbling and fumbling as they walk with God. However, some people believe the slightest stumble or fumble would violate the phrase *living above sin*. They think they are contending about doctrines/beliefs, when the problem is in their different definitions of the phrase *living above sin*.

When we are debating beliefs, we need to make sure we understand the other side’s definitions of words, phrases, and jargon being used in the debate, and vice versa. We may be surprised to see how often the other person does not truly comprehend what we are saying. A dispute over a Christian belief can have more to do with terminology than with the belief.

### **Who are the Biblical instructions instructing?**

We need to understand the blueprint of the Bible, or we could be following instructions that do not belong to us. When the Bible says “you”, we need to recognize the addressee:

You, the born again Christian?    You, Timothy?

You, the Israelites?    You, the reader?

You, all the people of the world?    Etc.

Different verses are addressed to different people. We need to learn/recognize which instructions are addressed to us, and how verses which are addressed to other people apply to us.

## **Everything is not mentioned in every Biblical account**

In the Bible, words and phrases are often used to represent a larger picture.

Human beings do not communicate with complete details. When we speak, we do not mention everything. We tell the highlights, and expect the hearer to automatically understand the rest.

**ILLUSTRATION** When Billy asked his grandma “What are we going to eat on Thanksgiving?”, she replied “Turkey”. She only mentioned turkey, but Billy automatically understood she would have many other kinds of food and beverages too.

### **EXAMPLE**

*Acts 16:31*

“31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.”

When the Bible says “**Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ**”, it is naming one thing, *belief*, to represent the acceptance of Christ and the whole realm of Christianity. It is like Billy’s grandma saying “turkey”. We are expected to understand the whole realm of Christianity comes along with believing on the Lord Jesus Christ. It concludes we are going to proceed forward following/obeying the instructions of Christ.

Belief is welded to all the other elements of Christianity. It is impossible for us to genuinely believe on Christ, and ignore the other components of Christianity.

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ is the starting point of following Jesus Christ. If we do not move forward in the things of Jesus Christ, we never started, and we remain an unbeliever. After believing, we start moving forward by obeying Acts 2:38.

## **Biblical instructions do not always start at point zero**

**ILLUSTRATION** Several people asked for road directions to the big event. The directions varied, because the people were starting their trip from different locations.

**LIKEWISE** When we read instructions in the New Testament being given to individuals and/or churches (*the epistles*), we need to know where these people were in their walk with God. You see, we may have to advance to the same location in God before the same instructions would be correct for us. If the road directions are from

Dayton to the special event, we need to be at Dayton for those particular directions to be correct.

We find directions in the Bible given to born again Christians. We may have to be a genuine born again Christian before these directions are correct for us.

### **Closed Mindedness**

When it comes to our Biblical beliefs, we can easily get closed minded. We go to church; we are repeatedly taught what the pastor believes are solid Bible doctrines. Over the years, because we are repeatedly taught these beliefs and their supporting Scriptures, they get welded into our innermost being. If we are not careful, we can get to the point we are rejecting/deflecting other Bible verses that can appear to contradict our beliefs. If we find some verses which seem to disagree with our beliefs, we need to remember they are Bible (*truth*) too.

If someone shows us Bible verses that appear to oppose our beliefs, or questions our beliefs, let us take time to prayerfully and Biblically study these verses. If we automatically deflect Bible verses that seem to disagree with our beliefs, we are living dangerously. We could be pushing away Biblical instructions that are essential for us. We do not know everything.

**REMEMBER** If we want truth, we must stay inside the Bible.

### **Overly Open Mindedness**

Overly open Mindedness is when we believe what someone tells us, just because it sounds right, without doing our prayerful Biblical research.

If we do not put enough time into sincere prayer and honorable Bible study, we can be gullible to believe anything that sounds good. We need to touch God in sincere prayer, and learn how to honorably research beliefs in the Bible. We need to know which beliefs to embrace, and which beliefs to eliminate.

### **Preferred beliefs, and undesired beliefs**

When the Bible tells us to do things we like to do, we say "Amen". When the Bible instructs us to do things we do not want to do, many people will come up with all kinds of reasons to convince themselves and others why the Biblical instructions do not pertain to us today.

It is extremely dangerous to decide what is right and wrong; then, search the Bible for words and phrases to support our beliefs. It seems we can find words and phrases in the Bible to justify or condemn, to our own satisfaction, just about anything.

We might be able to convince ourselves and others our preferred beliefs are Biblically correct, by strongly accenting a few words in a few Bible verses. We need to be careful, because we or someone else could have put together (*manufactured*) our/their own thing by selecting bits and pieces of the Bible.

When building Biblical support for our preferred beliefs, we need to be very careful, because we can unknowingly be picking and bending the Scriptures to fit our beliefs.

We tend to look long and deep at the verses that appear to support our preferred beliefs, and skim over and deflect verses that seem to give our beliefs problems. Why? We are in defense mode: arms up, defending our beliefs against possible revision.

A pastor and his wife were on their way to a debate. Two pastors were going to debate their contrary beliefs in front of the church members. The pastor's wife asked her husband, "What are we going to do if the other church wins the debate? He replied, "We will join their church."

If we are pretending parts of the Bible do not exist, or if we are convincing ourselves some Bible verses do not mean what they appear to be saying, we probably do not want to understand parts of the Bible. However, verses can be misunderstood or read out of Biblical context. It is possible some verses are not saying what we think they are saying.

We need to prayerfully read the Bible, while being on guard for the strong human tendency to believe what we want to believe, and the human tendency to deflect beliefs that seem undesirable to us.

What will we do if someone shows us Bible verses that seem to indicate our preferred beliefs are incorrect? Too many of us will simply deflect these Bible verses without prayerfully studying them, and continue to believe what we want to believe. We resist and deflect Bible verses, because we think we know better. We need to remember Bible is Bible.

I believe everyone's beliefs are continuously changing/growing, as we prayerfully and honestly study the whole Bible continuously. Our beliefs change and grow as we become better educated in God.

## **Getting outside the Bible**

The Bible is truth. If we get outside the Bible, we are getting outside the truth. We may be surprised to see how many beliefs are accepted by the multitudes, yet possess little or no Biblical support. Before we accept a belief, we need to know if it is a genuine Biblical belief.

In a few pages we will come to a section titled *Putting it on Paper*; it will teach us how to determine the amount of Biblical support a belief holds.

**NOTE** To be able to truly understand the Spiritual truths of the Bible, we need to have God (*the Holy Ghost*) dwelling inside us, teaching us.

## **Out of context**

We can easily get out of context when our studies are too brief, or when someone gives us a set of specially selected verses, etc. When we only study some of the verses pertaining to the belief /topic, we may only see part of the picture. If we only have part of the picture, we can come to an incorrect conclusion.

We need to make sure we are reading Bible verses in their context. We need to use an **exhaustive** concordance, and we need to be sure to deeply study all the verses on the subject.

## **Checking and verifying beliefs**

We need to learn to get our **exhaustive** concordance, and find all the Scriptures we can on the subject. We need to prayerfully study all the verses, and read enough verses at each location, so we can grasp the context. We need to compare all the Bible verses to see if we get the same understanding from every Scripture.

## **Be aware of true statements with off-base explanations**

The preacher said “All you have to do is believe on the Lord Jesus Christ”. Then he gave his personal explanation of what it means to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ. The problem was his personal explanation did not agree with the Bible’s definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ.

**BEWARE** People can make true statements, and then interpret them with off-base explanations.

## **Over Emphasizing**

When we show people Bible verses to correct their beliefs, we have a tendency to super emphasize these verses. We need to be careful; we do not want to over emphasize them to the point we are getting things out of Biblical balance.

## **Reading things into the Scriptures**

**EXAMPLE** Someone could take words from the Bible like “the sun rose”, “the sun stood still”, “the sun was going down”, and say “The Bible declares the sun moves”.

These words were not intended to be solar system education; these words merely paint a picture of a Biblical event. We still talk like the sun sets and rises even though we know it is the earth rotating.

We need to make sure we are not reading things into the Scriptures by interpreting Bible verses as saying more than their intended communication.

## **Going with the flow**

We can easily go to church and flow along with it. However, if our church is flowing in the wrong direction, we need to change churches.

We need to know how to prayerfully study the Bible, to make sure we are flowing with Jesus Christ.

## **Blindly following the path of our parents**

If we are following our parent’s beliefs, we still need to prayerfully study them. We need to see how they compare with the whole Bible.

## **Do not trust numbers or tradition**

Some people presume they are safe if they stay in the middle of the road. They figure they are safe if they believe and do the same things as people have generally done for hundreds of years, and if they ignore the beliefs to the far left, and to the far right.

Just because a belief is the middle of the road, just because it has been the traditional belief for thousands of years, or just because most people believe it, does not make it Biblically correct. If we want accuracy, we will prayerfully study the Bible with a right heart.



## **Prejudging**

If we push the interpretation of the Scriptures to fit our preferred beliefs, we are bias.

## **Some things in Bible reference books are incorrect, or only partly correct.**

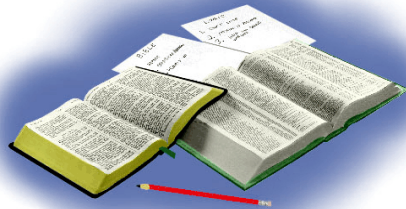
A portion of most Bible reference books is the author's beliefs and opinions. Authors often disagree; one reference book may say "it is hot", and another reference book may say "it is cold".

I refer to a large portion of the reference books, collectively, as *The fishing pond*. When I have trouble understanding something, I go fishing in reference books to see what other people say about it.

We absolutely need the Spirit of God guiding us to find truth. Without the Spirit of God guiding us, we will end up selecting /guessing things using our intellect.

## **Putting it on paper**

When we are studying a Biblical belief, we need to sort things on sheets of paper.



**First sheet** List every Bible verse for the belief that gives a solid Biblical fact (*Does not need a conclusion/assumption*).

**Second sheet** List verses for the belief that paint a conclusion /assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses.

**Third sheet** List verses for the belief that paint a conclusion /assumption, which comes from one Bible verse. (*When a belief is drawn from only one Bible verse, the belief cannot be crossed checked [confirmed] with other Bible verses.*)

**Fourth sheet** List every Bible verse that can appear to be in opposition or give problems to the belief?

**Fifth sheet** List every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support. Be sure to label this paper "*No Biblical Support*".

These papers give us an excellent visual for seeing how much Biblical evidence/support a belief holds. It is surprising how much understanding comes together when it is on paper. We need to use paper because our minds tend to remember the high points and what we want to remember, while we forget much of what was said, read, and taught. These paper records can retain everything much better than our minds.

**ILLUSTRATION** The Biblical debate started. The first man was big, good looking, muscular, educated, and smoothly delivered his presentation with much charisma and conviction. The second man was short, fat, thick glasses, pens in his pocket, and he nervously stumbled through his presentation. The crowd thought the first man easily won the debate.

John took notes listing the points made by each man, along with the Scriptures they quoted. He took this information, now out of its charismatic atmosphere, and prayerfully studied the bare facts. John did not rely on appearance or the speaker's diplomas. He established which beliefs were Biblically correct by prayerfully studying them in the Bible.

Many people can be taken in with smooth persuasive speaking, because it sounds great, and appears correct. However, sounding right, and being right, can be two different things.

If we do our paper lists (*above*), we will have an extremely revealing visual memory. These papers will show how much Biblical support we have for the belief, and how much support is merely human logic, opinions, etc. If we really want to know which beliefs are Biblically correct, we need to do these papers.

### **All parts of Christianity are linked together.**

All parts of Christianity are linked together like a chain. We cannot genuinely pick up one link without picking up the whole chain.



At one time people thought heavier objects fell faster than lighter ones. They thought it was common sense. Galileo put it to the test, proving their common sense was incorrect.

**LIKEWISE** We can be taught beliefs about God all our life, and these beliefs can appear 100% Biblically correct. But just as Galileo put common sense to the test, we need to put our beliefs through the Bible test. We need to study the Bible unbiasedly, prayerfully, and impartially. We need to use an **exhaustive** concordance, and compare our beliefs to the rest of the Bible. We may be surprised to find some of our beliefs do not stand as Biblically firm as we thought.

### **We need to remember, understanding comes from God.**

**“seek, and ye shall find”**

*Luke 11:9–10*

“9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

10 For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.”

**Ask God, having faith**

*James 1:5*

“5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.”

**“he will guide you into all truth”**

*John 16:13*

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak; and he will shew you things to come.”

A simple-thinking uneducated genuine Christian can be very knowledgeable in the things of God, because he is constantly being given understanding from the Spirit of God. God's Spirit, who dwells inside him, teaches, leads, and guides him continually.

**“thou hast hid these things  
from the wise and prudent”**

*Matthew 11:25–26*

“25 ¶ At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.

26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.”

How diligently we strive to find and travel the strait and narrow way of God reveals how much we love and desire him.

**May God bless you as you study the Bible.**

## ✓ CHECK LIST FOR STUDYING

- ☐ Did we sincerely pray for God's guidance?
- ☐ Are we studying with a right heart, for the right reasons?
- ☐ Are we searching for truth, honestly contemplating both sides of the belief?
- ☐ Have we already determined the outcome: prejudged?
- ☐ Are we steering our understanding of the Scriptures toward our preferred beliefs?
- ☐ Are we staying inside the Bible, avoiding non-Biblical input?
- ☐ Are we making our paper visuals, on five sheets of paper?
  1. Listing every Bible verse for the belief that gives solid Biblical facts?
  2. Listing Bible verses for the belief that paint a conclusion /assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses?
  3. Listing Bible verses for the belief that paint a conclusion /assumption, which comes from one Bible verse.
  4. Listing all Bible verses that can appear to be in opposition or give problems to the belief.
  5. Listing every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support.
- ☐ Are we finding as many Bible verses as we can about the belief, using our **exhaustive** concordance to see if the belief is consistent with the whole Bible?
- ☐ How do the verses apply to us?
- ☐ Did we get our New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionaries and study the words in the verses?

“Study”

2 Timothy 2:15

“15 Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.”

# 5

## Joining Jesus Christ

### Acts 2:38 is the first and foremost instructions for joining Jesus Christ.

- They were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church.
- All the apostles stood with St. Peter (*Acts 2:14*) as he preached and gave these instructions for joining Jesus Christ.
- They remain our joining instructions.

We need to believe Jesus Christ is God's Son, and accept him as our Lord (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour. Genuine belief on the Lord Jesus Christ always results with us joining Jesus Christ.

### THE INSTRUCTIONS

- **Repentance** A firm and true decision to turn our life's direction from following the path of sin to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. It is deciding to put all of our trust in Jesus Christ for salvation and everything. It is deciding to make him our personal **Lord** (*the one we obey*).
- **Water Baptism** Being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins. It is performed after we have believed and repented. It is our ceremony (*outward action*) for joining (*giving ourselves to*) Jesus Christ, further than infant sprinkling.
- **Spiritual Baptism** Spiritual Baptism is God entering us, saturating us with his Spirit, to live constantly inside us: to direct us; to lead us; to guide us; to teach us; to comfort us; to endue us with Godly power; to give us strength and boldness; to mold us into a righteous, moral, loving person, as we cooperate with God. Receiving the Holy Ghost (*God*) is our personal burning bush encounter with God. The true children of God follow/obey the Spirit of God; we desire to obey him.

## Canaanite Calendar — Lunar Months

Abib						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28

(22nd is Easter)

Ziv						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28

(15th is Pentecost)

During the forty days after Jesus Christ arose from the dead, Christ gave his disciples further instructions. Before he ascended into heaven, he instructed his disciples/followers to wait in Jerusalem until they received the Holy Ghost.

Seven weeks after Christ arose from the dead, they were in Jerusalem on the day of Pentecost (*the Feast of Weeks*). This is the day the Church of Jesus Christ was launched/activated; thus it is the first day of the Church. It was launched/activated when God filled the followers of Jesus Christ with the Holy Ghost. Now with the Holy Ghost constantly dwelling inside them, they had the needed power/authority and guidance to continue the work of Jesus Christ, and the soul saving business of the Church was put in full motion. God, as the Holy Ghost, constantly lives inside the followers of Jesus Christ: he teaches, directs, leads, guides, and comforts them; he gives them strength and boldness.

On the first day of the Church, after hearing St. Peter preach, bystanders anxiously desired to join Jesus Christ. They asked St. Peter and the rest of the apostles what they should do.

### These instructions remain our instructions.

**“what shall we do?”**

*Acts 2:37–39*

“37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

Note the words **“the promise”** in verse 39, above.

**The Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God, the Holy Spirit*)  
is sometimes called “the promise”.**

**“wait for the promise”**

*Acts 1:4–5*

“4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.

5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.”

**“having received of the Father  
the promise of the Holy Ghost”**

**“which ye now see and hear”** (*speaking in tongues*)

*Acts 2:33*

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

**“that we might receive the promise of the Spirit”**

*Galatians 3:14*

“14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.”

**Did we join Jesus Christ the Bible way?**



Check if completed

- ☐ **Do I truly believe** on the Lord Jesus Christ?
- ☐ **Did I repent?** Turn to continuously obey Christ?
- ☐ **Was I baptized** in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of my sins, by immersion, after I believed and repented?
- ☐ **Did I receive the Holy Ghost?** Is God dwelling inside me?  
Am I truly being led by the Holy Ghost?

The first step in playing ball is to join the team.

The first steps in following Jesus Christ  
are to believe on him and obey Acts 2:38

Some scholars believe baptism was around before John the Baptist, and it was common knowledge that baptism is a ceremony of converting/joining.

## **The procedure for joining Christ is symbolic of his death, burial, and resurrection.**

**Repentance** is symbolic of **death**.

Repentance is our personal decision to turn off our sinful path to follow Christ in righteousness. After repenting, the person who cursed, got drunk, enjoyed immoral sex, etc., no longer exists. In a sense, he/she is **dead**.

**Baptism** is symbolic of **burial**.

If we trace the word *baptize* back to its Greek origin, we will find it was an everyday word meaning *immersion/dip*. The Bible also indicates baptism by immersion. Baptism is a moment of being **buried** in water.

**Receiving the Holy Ghost** is symbolic of **resurrection**.

When we receive the Holy Ghost, we have been resurrected to a new life in Jesus Christ. We are a new person; we think, feel, and act differently. We are now growing into morality, good works, etc., because we are being led by the Spirit of God. Our old sinful self died. We have been **resurrected** into a new person of righteousness, by the grace of God.

**“we are buried with him by baptism into death”**

**“like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life”**

*Romans 6:3–5*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his* resurrection:”



## Hear / Believe / Repent

The majority of churches believe people need to hear, believe, and repent. The problem is some people do not fully understand the Biblical meanings of these terms. All of these actions are linked together. We cannot genuinely do any one of these things without doing the other two.

**Hear** means to take in the words and do accordingly: like Dad said “Listen to your Mother”.

**Believe** includes the following: believing the gospel of Jesus Christ; believing Jesus Christ is truly the Son of God; believing on his name; trusting him for salvation; accepting him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*).

**Repent** means more than telling God we are sorry, and asking him to forgive us. Repent means to change one’s mind and go in a different direction. In Biblical context, repentance is the firm decision to exit sin to love and follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

Some people tell God they are sorry for the sins they committed, attempting to escape the eternal lake of fire. The problem is they have no desire to stop all their sinning. They hope to escape the eternal lake of fire by saying the right words.

God knows if we are genuine with him. If we did not turn from our sinning to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, we did not repent. If we have honestly decided, from the bottom of our heart, to exit our sinful ways to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, we have repented. If we repented, we will be desiring and striving to obey Jesus Christ in all things. We will learn and grow upward as we travel the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

A good parallel of repentance is Jesus Christ calling his disciples. He said “**Follow me**”, and they stopped what they were doing and followed him.

**LIKEWISE** Jesus Christ is calling us to leave what we are doing (*sinning*) and follow him. Genuinely deciding to stop following sin to start following/obeying Jesus Christ is called repentance. Our life and actions will reveal if our repentance is genuine.

**“they straightway left *their* nets, and followed him”**

*Matthew 4:19–20*

“19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

20 And they straightway left *their* nets, and followed him.”

**“he arose, and followed him”**

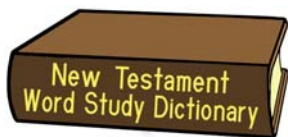
*Matthew 9:9*

“9 ¶ And as Jesus passed forth from thence, he saw a man, named Matthew, sitting at the receipt of custom: and he saith unto him, Follow me. And he arose, and followed him.”

**Christ is telling us “Follow me”.**

We are to stop sinning and follow Jesus Christ, striving to obey him to the best of our ability.

Research the word *repent* in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.



**“And such were some of you”**

*1 Corinthians 6:9–11*

“9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,

10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.

11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.”

The words **“such were some of you”** tell us pre-Christians did some of these things before they gave themselves to Jesus Christ. However, when they Biblically gave themselves to Jesus Christ, they were washed, sanctified, and justified, in the name of Jesus Christ and by the Holy Ghost; thus they ceased doing these things.

**“not willing that any should perish,  
but that all should come to repentance”**

*2 Peter 3:9*

“9 ¶ The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us—ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.”

**BELOW** We are looking down into two rooms with a door between them. The one room represents the camp of the world, and the other room represents the camp of God. Jesus Christ is the door of God's grace. Where do we want to live?

**Inside the evil camp  
of sin, lives**

- abortion
- adultery
- backbiting
- belittling
- bitterness
- child molesting
- covetousness
- cursing
- disobedience
- drunkenness
- evil music
- fornication
- getting even
- gossip
- hating people
- homosexuality
- idolatry
- immorality
- iniquity
- lasciviousness
- lust
- lying
- murders
- non-spouse sex
- pornography
- pride
- prostitution
- rapes
- ridiculing
- reviling
- rioting
- seductive dressing
- selfishness
- stealing
- vulgarity
- witchcraft
- etc.

**Inside the good camp  
of God, lives**

- access to God
- blessings of God
- caring
- clean conversations
- faithfulness
- forgiveness
- gentleness
- giving
- good works
- guidance by God
- healthy thinking
- helping
- holiness
- honesty
- hope
- hospitality
- humbleness of mind
- joy
- kindness
- liberty
- longsuffering
- love
- meekness
- mercy
- obedience
- patience
- peace
- purity
- rejoicing
- righteousness
- self control
- sharing
- temperance
- thankfulness
- truthfulness
- understanding
- etc.

**We enter the camp of Jesus Christ by believing on the Lord  
Jesus Christ, which includes obeying Acts 2:38.**

**Obedience** to God is repentance in action.

Our authentic inward action of repentance  
will always result with us doing proper outward actions.



Hearing, believing, repentance,  
obedience, doing our best, etc.,  
are all linked together.  
It is a case of doing all or nothing.

### **Hear**

The word *HEAR* includes the action of doing it:  
like Dad said “Listen to your Mother”.

*Luke 9:35*

“35 And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him.”

*John 5:24*

“24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.”

*John 18:37*

“7 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.”

*Acts 3:22–23*

“22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

23 And it shall come to pass, *that* every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.”

*Acts 15:7*

“7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them, Men *and* brethren, ye know how that a good while ago God made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe.”

*Romans 10:17*

“17 So then faith *cometh* by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.”

## Belief

If we are sick and believe in (*have faith in*) our Doctor, we will follow his instructions. Likewise, if we believe in (*have faith in*) Jesus Christ to lead us to Heaven, we will follow his instructions too. Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes obeying him.

*John 6:29*

“29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.”

*John 6:40*

“40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.”

*John 6:47*



“47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.”

*Mark 16:15–16*

“15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

*John 1:12*

“12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:”

*John 3:14–18*

“14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:

15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.

18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.”

*John 3:36*

“36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.”

*John 11:25–26*

“25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:

26 And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?”

*Acts 13:38–39*

“38 Be it known unto you therefore, men *and* brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.”

*Acts 16:30–34*

“30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved?

31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.

34 And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.”

*Acts 10:43*

“43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”

*John 12:46*

“46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.”

*John 16:27*

“27 For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God.”

*John 8:24*

“24 I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I am *he*, ye shall die in your sins.”

*Romans 10:9–10*

“9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.”

## Repentance

Repentance is a true and firm decision, from the uttermost depth of our heart, to turn from our sinful ways to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. The way we live reveals if our repentance is genuine.

*Matthew 4:17*

“17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.”

*Luke 13:3*

“3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.”

*Acts 17:30*

“30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:”

*Luke 5:32*

“32 I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.”

*Mark 6:12*

“12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent.”

*Acts 26:20*

“20 But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.”

*2 Peter 3:9*

“9 ¶ The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us—ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.”

*Luke 24:47*

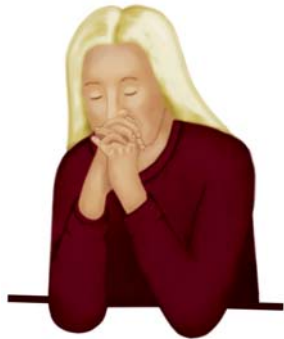
“47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.”

*Matthew 11:20*

“20 Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not:”

*Mark 1:15*

“15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.”



## Obedience

Repentance is turning from sin to obey God. If we have truly repented, we will be striving to obey Jesus Christ.

Matthew 7:21

“21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”

James 1:22

“22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.”

1 John 2:17

“17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.”

1 John 2:3–4

“3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.

4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.”

John 8:31

“31 ¶ Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on him, If ye continue in my word, *then* are ye my disciples indeed;”

Luke 11:28

“28 But he said, Yea rather, blessed *are* they that hear the word of God, and keep it.”

John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

Matthew 12:50

“50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother.”

Luke 8:15

“15 But that on the good ground are they, which in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep *it*, and bring forth fruit with patience.”

Luke 14:27

“27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.”

John 15:10

“10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father’s commandments, and abide in his love.”



## Disobedience

Repentance is turning from sin to obey God. Ignoring to obey God's instructions reveals an unrepented heart.

*1 Corinthians 6:9–11*

“9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,

10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.

11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.”

*Matthew 13:41–42*

“41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;

42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.”

*Galatians 5:19–21*

“19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,

20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,

21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.”

*Romans 1:18*

“18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;”

*Ephesians 5:5–7*

“5 For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

6 Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience.

7 Be not ye therefore partakers with them.”

*Titus 1:16*

“16 They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.”

*1 John 3:10*

“10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.”

*3 John 1:11*

“11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God.”

*Luke 6:46*

“46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?”

*Matthew 7:23*

“23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.”

*Matthew 7:26*

“26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand:”

### **All genuine believers follow Christ.**

Christ's followers are sometimes called Christ's sheep.

**“and the sheep follow him”**

*John 10:3–4*

“3 To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out.

4 And when he putteth forth his own sheep, he goeth before them, and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice.”

**“and they follow me”**

*John 10:26–28*

“26 But ye believe not, because ye are not of my sheep, as I said unto you.

27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand.”

## II

### Water Baptism

**It is our ceremony for entering, joining,  
putting on, giving ourselves to, Jesus Christ  
for the remission of our sins.**

*(Further than infant sprinkling)*

*(This chapter gives statements about water baptism.*

*We will find deeper explanations  
in the following subdivided chapters.)*

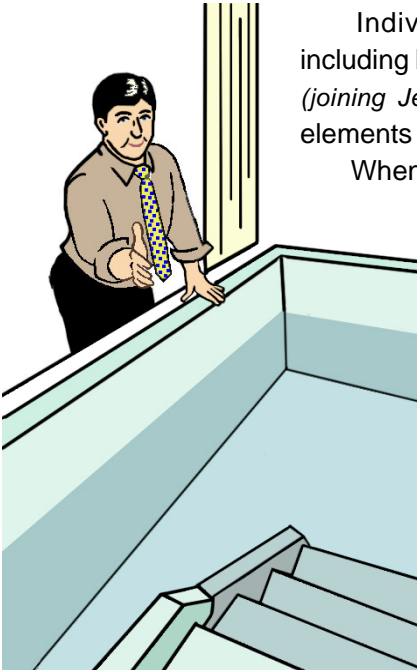
Individual elements of Christianity,  
including baptism, do not fly solo.

We can say

“We are baptized into Christ”,  
for it is in the Bible.

*Galatians 3:27*

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ  
have put on Christ.”



Individual elements of Christianity,  
including baptism, do not fly solo. Baptism  
(*joining Jesus Christ*) is linked to all the  
elements of Christianity.

When we say “We join Christ by being  
baptized into Christ”, we are  
naming one action, *baptism*,  
to represent all the elements  
of joining Jesus Christ: just  
as Tom's grandmother used  
a single word, “Turkey”, to  
represent the complete  
Thanksgiving meal.

When we join Jesus Christ  
by being baptized into Christ,  
we become a disciple of  
Jesus Christ: a student and  
follower of Jesus Christ.

## Let us follow a brief path on water baptism

1. John the Baptist came to the scene baptizing people with the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.
2. Jesus was baptized by John the Baptist.
3. We read in the Bible about Jesus baptizing. However, it was his disciples who actually did the baptizing/immersing.
4. Before Christ ascended up into heaven, he instructed his disciples to go and do the following:
  - Preach the gospel to the whole world;
  - **Baptize** the people who believe on Jesus Christ;
  - Teach them to obey Christ's commandments.
5. A few days later, on the first day of the Church, we find St. Peter instructing new believers on how to get right with God. He told them to repent, be baptized, and receive the Holy Ghost. On the same day they baptized about three thousand new converts into Christ. (*Acts 2:37–41*)
6. We find St. Paul re-baptizing people who were already baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism. Why? Although these people were baptized, they were not baptized into Jesus Christ, so Paul re-baptized them **“in the name of the Lord Jesus”**. (*Acts 19:1–7*)  
(See chapter H for a better explanation of why they baptized people in the name of the "Lord Jesus".)

## Baptism is further than infant sprinkling.

People in the Bible were baptized immediately after believing.

The command is to believe, repent, and be baptized.

We cannot find in the Bible, in recorded accounts, or in teachings, where a baptism took place before belief.

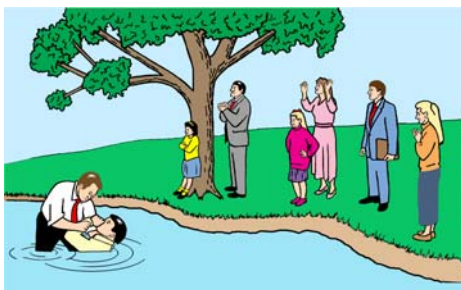
Jesus Christ made and baptized more disciples than John the Baptist. More people were becoming followers of Jesus Christ than followers of John. John was fading; Jesus Christ was advancing. This was God's plan.

### **“Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John”**

*John 4:1–2*

“1 ¶ When therefore the Lord knew how the Pharisees had heard that Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John,  
2 (Though Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples,)”

When we are baptized into Christ, we are putting on Christ. The Bible compares baptism to the putting on of a garment. (See Strong's #1746 in your New Testament Word Study Dictionary. It will confirm that the words putting on Christ is being paralleled to putting on clothing.)



### **“have put on Christ”**

*Galatians 3:27*

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

**When we see baptism as an action of joining, entering, putting on, Jesus Christ, we start to comprehend things better.**

**“Baptism saves us”** can be understood as

**“Joining Jesus Christ saves us”,**

because water baptism is our ceremony for joining/entering/putting on Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.

### **“even baptism doth also now save us”**

*1 Peter 3:21*

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ.”

**“Believe and be baptized”** can be understood as  
**“Believe and join Jesus Christ”**,

because water baptism is our ceremony for  
joining/entering/putting on Jesus Christ  
for the remission of our sins.

**“He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved”**

*Mark 16:16*

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

When St. Peter saw the Gentiles receive the Holy Ghost, he understood they needed to be baptized into Jesus Christ.

**“he commanded them to be baptized  
in the name of the Lord”**

*Acts 10:45–48*

“45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

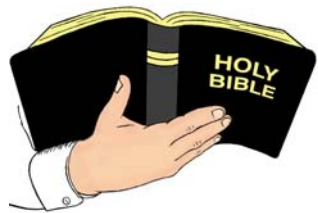
John the Baptist was baptizing, and some people declined. They rejected the counsel of God; they rejected God's path of salvation.

**“rejected the counsel of God  
against themselves”**

*Luke 7:29–30*

“29 And all the people that heard *him*, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John.

30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him.”



Baptism is to be performed immediately after someone believes and repents. The jailor's whole household was baptized immediately after the midnight earthquake; they did not even wait until daylight (Acts 16:25–33). Baptizing the people immediately after they believed and repented seems to be the norm throughout the New Testament.

### **“the same hour of the night”**

Acts 16:33

“33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

When we contemplate baptism, we need to be aware of the immense power and authority found in the name of “Jesus Christ”. The name of “Jesus Christ” has power to remit sins.

When we consider all the verses in the Bible, we do not find the good descriptive names of God, “*Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*”, being used as the verbal signature for baptism or anything. We find everything being performed in the name of “Jesus Christ”: baptisms, healings, and casting out demons. Get your **exhaustive** concordance and check it out for yourself.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one and the same God /Deity, not three Gods (*three Deity beings*) in unity. Nobody is being overlooked or left out when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”. Jesus Christ is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, existing together in the body of Jesus Christ.



## Baptism in the name of “Jesus Christ”

**“be baptized every one of you  
in the name of Jesus Christ”**

*Acts 2:38*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

**“they were baptized  
in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

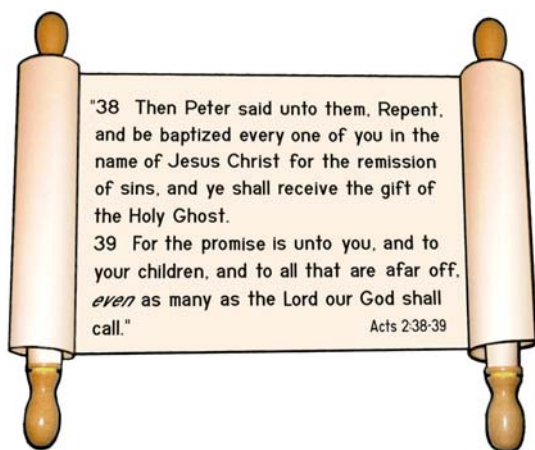
*Acts 19:5*

“5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

**“they were baptized  
in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

*Acts 8:16*

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”



The New Testament was translated from Greek. In Greek, the word *baptize* was an everyday word meaning to dip/immerse. Washing hands, or anything, by immersing them into water is baptizing them.

My studies inform me the Greek word for *baptism* cannot be translated to mean *sprinkle* or *pour*. A close examination of people being baptized in the Bible indicates they were immersed. Study the word *baptize* in your New Testament word Study Dictionary, and in your Bible.



**In the following subdivided chapters, A – K,  
we will look closer at the Scriptures,  
and go deeper into the details on water baptism.**

- A.** In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commanded water baptism. If the believers are not being baptized into Christ, the Great Commission is not being fully obeyed.
- B.** The First Day of The Church; the First Converts of the Church
- C.** The Bible repeatedly declares baptism is for the remission of sins.
- D.** If baptism is for the remission of sins, why was Jesus baptized?
- E.** The word *baptize* is a Greek word. It means immerse/dip. It does not translate as *sprinkle* or *pour*. If we study baptism in the Bible, we will find everything indicates immersion.
- F.** Baptism, Further than Infant Sprinkling
- G.** Once we believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, we are to be baptized immediately.
- H.** Baptism and everything is to be administered in the name of “Jesus Christ”. People who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism were re-baptized in the name of the **“Lord Jesus”**.
  - a.** The Bible declares there is only one God.  
*(We are not omitting anyone, when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, because God is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.)*
- J.** The thief on the cross was not baptized.
- K.** 1 Corinthians 1:17

**“be baptized, and wash away thy sins”**

*Acts 22:16*

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

# A

## The Great Commission

**After** Christ died on the cross for our sins, he arose from the dead. He was seen for forty days before he ascended up into heaven.

**Before** he ascended into heaven, Christ gave his disciples some go and do instructions: **(1)** Go and preach the Gospel to everyone; **(2)** Baptize everyone who believes; **(3)** Teach the believers to obey Christ's commandments.

These instructions are called the Great Commission. Along with the commission was the promise that Christ's followers would soon receive the Holy Ghost.

**Preaching the gospel to the whole world  
is only one part of the Great Commission.**

**If the believers are not being baptized into Christ,  
the Great Commission is not being fully obeyed.**

We can find records of the Great Commission recorded by St. Matthew, St. Mark, and St. Luke. We need to study all the records.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commands his Church to baptize the believers.

When Jesus Christ gives us a commandment, and our heart is right, our love for God will compel us to obey him.

**QUESTION** How do we know Christ is talking about water baptism, and not Spiritual baptism, in the Great Commission?

**ANSWER** He is instructing human beings to perform it.



## **St. Matthew's record of the Great Commission**

Note how clearly St. Matthew records the three parts:

- (1)** teach/preach the gospel; **(2)** baptize the believers;
- (3)** teach the believers to obey Christ's commandments.

### **“baptizing them”**

*Matthew 28:18–20*

“18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.”

## **St. Mark's record of the Great Commission**

### **“and is baptized”**

*Mark 16:15–16*

“15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

## **St. Luke's record of the Great Commission**

St. Luke wrote two books of the Bible. One book is called **St. Luke**, and the other book is called **The Acts of the Apostles**. Bible verses from both books are used to explain St. Luke's record of the Great Commission.

When we read the Great Commission in St. Luke, we do not find the word *baptism*. However, St. Luke's record of the Great Commission clearly ties it to what was preached in Jerusalem on the day of Pentecost (*the first day of the Church – Acts 2*). With this additional information, St. Luke's record of the Great Commission is tied to water baptism.

### **“repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem”**

*Luke 24:46–49*

“46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:

47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

48 And ye are witnesses of these things.

49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.”

To see how Luke 24:47 connects to the first day of the Church, which ties it to baptism, we need to consider five points of the verse.

1. **“repentance and remission of sins”**
2. **“should be preached”**
3. **“in his name”** (*in the name of “Jesus Christ”*)
4. **“among all nations,”**
5. **“beginning at Jerusalem.”**

*Luke 24:47*

“47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.”



**On the first day of the Church, the day of Pentecost,** they were in **“Jerusalem”**. They were **“among all nations”**. Jews who lived in many other nations came home for Pentecost (*the Feast of Weeks*). Let us look and see what was **“preached in his name”** about **“repentance and remission of sins”**.

**“Repent, and be baptized  
every one of you  
in the name of Jesus Christ  
for the remission of sins”**

*Acts 2:38*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

Baptizing people is definitely a part of the Great Commission!

If converts are not being baptized into Christ,  
the Great Commission is not being fully obeyed.

# B

## The first day of the Church

On the **first day** of the Church,  
all the apostles stood with St. Peter  
as he instructed the **first converts**  
of the Church on how to join Jesus Christ.

When Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he handed the work of preaching the Gospel, and everything which goes along with it, over to the Church (*the followers of Christ*). But at this point and time they did not have what it takes to do the job, because they were human beings.

The Church is all the genuine Christians in the world  
as one group – the people.

On the day of Pentecost, God (*as the Holy Ghost*) entered the genuine followers of Christ, and remained constantly inside them. With God dwelling inside them, directing them, they were ready to do their job. This is the day the Church was launched/activated by God, and began to function through the Holy Ghost. It was the first day of the Church.

Belonging to a church, being a preacher or priest, holding an office in the church, even if it is the highest office, does not make a person a genuine Christian. Since the day of Pentecost, following the leading of the Spirit of God, who lives 24/7 inside all genuine Christians, identifies the genuine Christian (*identifies who is a genuine Christian*). The Spirit, who is inside Jesus Christ, is inside all genuine Christians.

**“if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,  
he is none of his.”**

*Romans 8:9*

“9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

The Holy Ghost gives Christ's followers directions, power, truth, strength, knowledge, comfort, guidance, the fruit of the Spirit, etc. The Holy Ghost steers the genuine followers of Jesus Christ in the right direction.

Pentecost is an annual feast of the Jews (*Feast of Weeks*). "The day of Pentecost" in this book is referring to the day of Pentecost recorded in the 2nd chapter of Acts.

# C

## Water Baptism for the remission of sins

*(Further than infant sprinkling)*

Whether we read about St. Paul's baptism,

Or we read about John the Baptist  
baptizing with the baptism of repentance,

Or we read St. Peter's instructions which were  
given to people who wanted to join Jesus Christ,

We find water baptism **for the remission of sins!**

**“be baptized, and wash away thy sins”**

*Acts 22:16*

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

**“for the remission of sins”**

*Mark 1:4*

“4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.”

**“for the remission of sins”**

*Luke 3:3*

“3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;”

**“for the remission of sins”**

*Acts 2:38*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

Water baptism is our ceremony for entering, joining,  
putting on, accepting, Jesus Christ for the remission of sins.

Water Baptism wears the Biblical tag,  
**“for the remission of sins”.**

We are baptized into (*join*) Jesus Christ **for** the remission of our sins. Being baptized into Christ takes us **unto/into** a place in Christ where our sins are forgiven, and where we are freed from sin's handcuffs/bonds. However, baptism is only one part (*the ceremony part*) of joining Jesus Christ.

**QUESTION** How can a dip in water remit sins? If baptism is for the remission of sins, do we need to keep being baptized regularly because we are not perfect?

**ANSWER** Baptism is being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ". It is performed after we genuinely believe and repent. The dip is the God given ceremony for giving ourselves to (*joining*) Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.

We do not need to be repeatedly baptized, because we are not perfect. Being repeatedly baptized would be repeatedly joining Jesus Christ, repeatedly converting from a life of sin to follow Jesus Christ. 1 John 1:7–9 is instructions for baptized Christians who fall short of being perfect while they are striving to obey Jesus Christ.

Re-baptism is performed if we have a question about our baptism being executed the Bible way. St. Paul re-baptized the people at Ephesus, because they were not baptized into Christ (*Acts 19:1–7*).

Baptism does not fly solo; it is only one part of joining Jesus Christ. The process is as follows: **(1)** We hear and believe the gospel of salvation through Jesus Christ, believing he is truly the Son of God; **(2)** We repent by making a firm unchanging decision to exit sin to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. Repentance will result with us remorsefully telling God we are sorry for the sins we committed; **(3)** We put all our trust in Jesus Christ, accepting him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*); **(4)** We are baptized into Christ, following our Lord's instructions; **(5)** God will enter and remain constantly inside us: to guide us; to produce the fruit of the Spirit in our lives, including good works; etc.; **(6)** All the above must be done from the uttermost depth of our heart.

All the pieces of Christianity are tied together. We cannot be a genuine Christian by doing a few pieces of Christianity, and willfully rejecting the rest.



**Remission of Sins** is more than the forgiveness of sins; it goes on through the Holy Ghost to deliver us from sinning (*from sin's handcuffs*). It gives us liberty to love and follow God in righteousness.

We need to recognize the immense power/authority in the name of “Jesus Christ” to remit our sins. His name is called over us when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

Baptism is talked about as *washing away our sins*, even though the water does not wash sins from our body. This is because we are immersed/baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, and come up out of the water with our sins remitted, joined to Jesus Christ. However, being baptized into Christ (*joining Jesus Christ*) must be a choice and action from the uttermost depth of our heart.

**“And now why tarriest thou?  
arise, and be baptized,  
and wash away thy sins”**

*Acts 22:16*

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

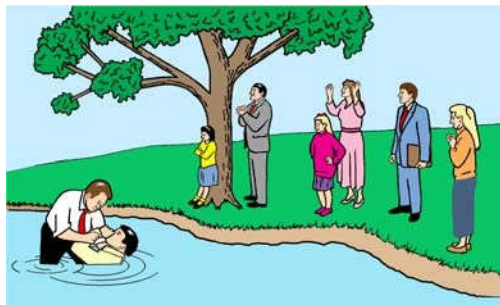
**“even baptism doth also now save us”**

*1 Peter 3:21*

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:”

By being baptized into Christ, we are converting from following the ways of the world/sin, and maybe another religion, to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

Some Bible scholars believe the Jews were familiar with the use and meaning of water baptism before John the Baptist.



## **We have two different sets of directions for obtaining forgiveness from God.**

1. The first set of instructions is for people who are outside of Jesus Christ. They are instructed to join Jesus Christ for the remission of their sins by obeying Acts 2:38.

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

2. The second set of instructions is for people who are walking in the light (*walking in God*). These people have already joined Jesus Christ. They have been baptized into Christ, and have received the Holy Ghost. If they sin, they are to confess it to God, repent, and strive not to sin again.

**“if we walk in the light”** (*walking in God*) 1 John 1:7–9

“7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.

9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”

Use an **exhaustive** concordance, a Word Study Dictionary, and prayerfully study *remission of sins*.



May God bless you, as you search the Bible.

**Another piece of the forgiveness picture,  
We reap what we sow.**

*Mark 11:26*

“26 But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.”

*Matthew 6:14–15*

“14 For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you:

15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.”

*Matthew 18:23–35*

“23 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants.

24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents.

25 But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made.

26 The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.

27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt.

28 But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellow servants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took *him* by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest.

29 And his fellow servant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.

30 And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt.

31 So when his fellow servants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done.

32 Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desiredst me:

33 Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellow servant, even as I had pity on thee?

34 And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him.

35 So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.”

# D

## Why was Jesus baptized?

When we are on the topic of baptism for the remission of sins, people often ask “Why was Jesus baptized?” If we turn to the Bible, we will find Jesus Christ answering this question.

John the Baptist was baptizing people with the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.

**“the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins”**

*Mark 1:4*

“4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.”

**“the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins”**

*Luke 3:3*

“3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;”

**“baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins”**

*Matthew 3:6*

“6 And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins.”

Then Jesus Christ came to be baptized by John the Baptist. Why would Jesus Christ, the only sinless man, need to be baptized?

He is sinless, because he is Almighty God in the flesh. God cannot sin.

**Even John the Baptist**

**questioned the baptizing of Jesus Christ.**

*Matthew 3:14*

“14 But John forbad him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me?”

**Jesus answered this question.**

*Matthew 3:15*

“15 And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer *it to be so* now: for thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness. Then he suffered him.”

**Jesus Christ said he was baptized  
to fulfill all righteousness.**

Some people desire a deeper understanding, but I do not know of any additional Scriptures on the subject. Since Jesus Christ answered the question, we know it is the correct answer.

# E

## Baptism is immersion

In our English language, the word *baptism* is the name of a Christian ceremony. The word *baptism* is a Greek word. If we study its meaning, we will find it gives us information about the ceremony.

Our English New Testament was translated from Greek. When they translated it, they did not translate the baptism words into English. Baptism words are words like *baptize*, *baptism*, *Baptist*, etc. Translating would be transferring the Greek words into English words. When they came to the baptism words in the Bible, instead of transferring these Greek words into English words, they simply transferred them into the English alphabet/pronunciation; it is called transliteration. We have Greek words spelled with the English alphabet, using the English suffixes to mold them into the English language.

The Greek word ***baptízō***, which we now have spelled in English, is ***baptize***. It means to Dip/Immerse. How do we know the definition of the word? It is a Greek word; we can find the definition in an appropriate Greek dictionary, or in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.

In Greek, ***baptízō*** (baptize) was an everyday word. If we wash our hands by immersing them in a container of water, we ***baptízō*** our hands. ***Baptízō*** is describing how we washed our hands: by immersing/dipping them in water.

Just as in English, the Greek language has different words for immersion, sprinkling, and pouring:

**Baptízō** means **to dip/immerse**;

**Rhantízō** means **to sprinkle**;

**Katachéō** means **to pour upon**.

## **We can find words in the Bible indicating immersion:**

- **Going into the water**, and **coming out of the water**;
- Baptizing where they had **much water**;
- Words like **buried** and **planted** (*being put under*).

Why would people go down into a river, or any body of water, to sprinkle people, or to pour a little water on their head? Why did they choose a place for baptism which had much water? I believe they wanted plenty of water for immersing the people.

### **In the Jordan river**

*Matthew 3:6*

“6 And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins.”

### **“out of the water”**

*Matthew 3:16*

“16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:”

### **“went down both into the water”**

### **“come up out of the water”**

*Acts 8:38–39*

“38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.

39 And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.”

### **“because there was much water there”**

*John 3:23*

“23 And John also was baptizing in Aenon near to Salim, because there was much water there: and they came, and were baptized.”

### **“Buried”**

*Colossians 2:12*

“12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.”

### **“buried” “planted” (*being put under*)**

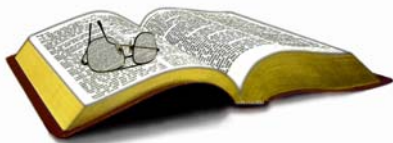
*Romans 6:3–5*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his* resurrection:”

The main meanings for the Greek word **baptizō**, which was transliterated into the word *baptize*, are the following: dip; immerse; overwhelm; submerge; saturate; wash. (See Strong's # 907)



I do not know anybody who questions if immersion is Biblical baptism. Immersion fits the baptisms found in the Bible, and it fulfills the meaning of the word *baptize*.

Sprinkling and pouring do not have Biblical support. Sprinkling or pouring cannot be Biblically shown to be a permissible substitute for baptism (*immersion/dip*).

I believe the foundation for sprinkling is built with assumptions and conclusions; they seem to stem from the Old Testament Law of Moses concerning the ceremonial washings and sprinklings.

Why did sprinkling and pouring get started? I believe it was reasoned immersion was not appropriate for some people: infants; the sick and dying; etc. The Bible does not say what we are to do when people are physically unable to be immersed.

Does the Bible declare they baptized people by immersion? **Absolutely!** The Bible says it many times. However, most people do not see it, because it was never translated into English. It says **“immersion/dip”**, **in the Greek language**, every time the Bible says “baptize” or any of the baptism words.

If the baptism words were translated into English, we should have things like the following:

- John being called the **Immerser**, or the **Dipper**, instead of the Baptist.
- **“Repent and be immersed”**, or **dipped**, instead of “Repent and be baptized”.
- People being **immersed**, or **dipped**, in the Jordan river, instead of people being baptized in the Jordan river.

Being immersed or dipped means nothing unless it is a genuine baptism ceremony, performed with a right heart.

Saying, “I was baptized by sprinkling”, is saying, “I was immersed by sprinkling”. This is because the word *baptize* means immerse; it does not translate *sprinkle* or *pour*.

I do not believe immersion is intended for infants; it is too dangerous. Infants have their own ceremony (*read the next chapter*).

I believe after we believe on Christ, and choose to follow him from the depth of our heart, we are to be immersed in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of our sins.

Immersing repented believers has Biblical support. Everything else (*sprinkling, pouring, infants, etc.*) falls under assumptions and conclusions.

Considering the great importance of baptism, I believe it needs to be performed the way the Bible portrays it: by immersion. Why should we settle for assumptions, when we have Bible?

If we do not use some of our time to research the things of God, we are not doing our best. I challenge everyone to research the word *baptize*. Get a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary, and check it out for yourself. If you do not own a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary, you need to buy one.



Sometimes the Greek meaning of the word *baptize* is noted in a general dictionary or encyclopedia. But we need to beware, most of these books reflect what baptism has become, what it has evolved into, rather than defining the Greek word from which it was transliterated, and its Biblical correctness.

In research work we need to separate facts from opinions. Even a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary will likely insert the author's opinions and conclusions.

**May God bless you with truth,  
as you do your prayerful research.**



# F

## Water Baptism

### Further than infant sprinkling

We need to give our infants to God in a ceremony; it is the proper and correct thing to do. We need to put our children into God's hands: to be guided, overseen, and protected by him. Some churches call this ceremony dedication, and other churches sprinkle some water on the infant and call it baptism. As an infant, Jesus was circumcised and presented to God (*Luke 2:21–22*). Yes, we need to give our children to God in a ceremony.

I believe infant sprinkling is a case of calling infant dedication “baptism”.

In many churches water baptism is quite different than how it is portrayed in the Bible. In the Bible people were baptized immediately after they believed and repented.

Infant baptism is not mentioned in the Bible. Everything about it is based on conclusions and assumptions. Infant sprinkling does not parallel the water baptisms of the Bible, thus many people do not believe it is, or trust it to be, a valid baptism.

Many churches sprinkle infants and call it “baptism”. They are following their church’s tradition, and assuming the following:

- **Assuming** infants were baptized with the households: the Bible talks about households being baptized;
- **Assuming** sprinkling, or pouring, is a permissible substitute for baptism: the word “baptism” means immersion/dip;
- **Assuming**, since circumcision was performed on infants, following Scriptural instructions; baptism may also be performed for infants.

Some people believe these **assumptions** are correct. But they are **assumptions** that cannot be Biblically verified.

Other people **assume**, since the Biblical portrayal of baptism does not seem to fit infants, baptism is not intended for them. They **assume** baptism is not required until a child is old enough to personally believe on the Lord Jesus Christ.

- In the Bible, we repeatedly find believing and repenting tied to baptism. Infants are too young to choose, believe, and repent.
- To be baptized first, and believe later, is not found in the Bible.
- The word *baptism* (*baptizō*) is an everyday Greek word meaning to dip/immerse. Infants are too young to be immersed; it is not safe.



### Going in Circles

If we would gather pastors and priests from the various church organizations, and ask them to explain infant baptism from the Bible, we would get different opinions, conclusions, assumptions, beliefs, etc. One pastor will point to verses to support his opinion, while another pastor will come back with verses to dissolve the opinion. The Bible does not address infant baptism. Infant baptism is a subject full of debate, disagreements and unanswered questions.

If we are genuinely baptized (*immersed*) into Jesus Christ after we believe and repent, following the Biblical instructions, our baptism is confirmed; it is above the questions and debates.

### The Bible does not answer every question.

**QUESTION** Are we to baptize infants?

**ANSWER** The Bible does not appear to answer this question.

**QUESTION** Are we to give our children to God in a ceremony?

**ANSWER** We find people throughout the Bible giving their children to God; even Jesus was circumcised and presented to God as an infant. I believe we need to give our infants/children to God in a ceremony. What kind of ceremony? The Bible does not answer this question.

**QUESTION** Is sprinkling an accepted mode of baptism?

**ANSWER** The word “baptism” means an immersion dip. I cannot find any Biblical support for any other mode, including sprinkling.

**QUESTION** What are we to do for the people who are not in physical condition to be immersed? Does God make exceptions for them? What are we to do?

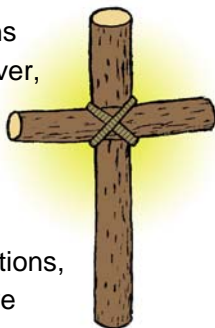
**ANSWER** The Bible does not appear to answer these questions. God is the judge, and he is good and merciful. But to say what God’s judgment is going to be in any situation is probably our opinion. However, I believe if someone genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ, God will provide a way to do what is necessary. We need to remember God always does what is good and righteous.

Some people fill in the unanswered questions with their thoughts, opinions, and beliefs. However, when people have matured enough to believe and repent, many of the “*what should we do’s*” disappear, and we have straight forward Biblical instructions.

Since the Bible does not answer many questions, we need to do what we believe is correct, until we can follow the Biblical instructions. When we are mature enough to obey the Biblical instructions, we need to obey them; because Biblical instructions always override our thoughts, opinions, and beliefs.

Some churches will not use water in the infant ceremony, and they put forth an extra effort to make sure it is called “dedication”. Their purpose is to ward off confusion that may hinder someone from being baptized after he personally believes on the Lord Jesus Christ. Someone might say “I was baptized as an infant; I do not need to be baptized”. Holding to his infant sprinkling, he might ignore being baptized the way it can be Biblically verified.

Some parents have a deep concern/worry: “What if households being baptized included the infants? Where would my child spend eternity if he would die before being baptized?” This worry stems from baptism being the ceremony for joining Jesus Christ.



The infant ceremony is not the problem;  
Infant ceremonies need to be performed.  
We need to give our children to God.

The disagreement is over the following question:

Is the infant ceremony a genuine baptism,  
or is it a dedication being called “baptism”?

This answer affects the following question:

Am I to be baptized into Jesus Christ  
of my own freewill (*my choice*),  
when I mature and personally decide to follow Christ?

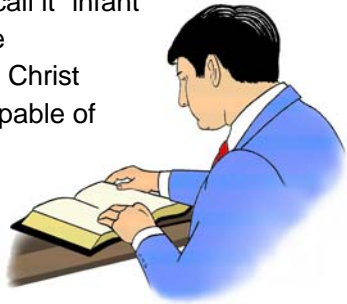
I believe we are to do an infant ceremony, and be baptized into Christ when we mature and personally believe and repent from the depth of our heart, because this is when it can be Biblically verified as being baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of sins.

We need to always do our best. We should never say “That is good enough”, when we can do better.

I consider all infant ceremonies to be dedications,  
because they cannot be Biblically verified as baptism.

### **I believe**

As parents we need to give our children to God in a ceremony: dedication, some people call it “infant baptism”. When a child is matured, the responsibility of giving himself to Jesus Christ passes unto him. At this point he is capable of believing and repenting, and can be baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, the way it can be Biblically verified. Deciding to follow Jesus Christ is a decision which must come from the depth of his own heart.



I believe children at a young age are capable of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, and are capable of personally choosing to follow him.

We may think our infant sprinkling is good enough, but is it good enough when we can do better? We need to strive to do all the things of God accurately. When we learn how to do something better, we need to do it the better way. Our love for God should cause us to do our very best in all the things of God.

There is more to giving ourselves to Jesus Christ than water baptism. Water baptism is the ceremony part, and we need to remember it wears the Biblical tag **“for the remission of sins”**.

### **Belief and Baptism are tied together.**

**“He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved”**

*Mark 16:16*

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

**They believed and were baptized.**

*Acts 8:12–13*

“12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.”

**Belief & Baptism “and thy house”**

*Acts 16:31–33*

“31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

**“believed, and were baptized”**

*Acts 18:8*

“8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized.”

**Belief & Baptism**

*Acts 19:4–5*

“4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

## **They Believed, received the Holy Ghost, and were Baptized**

*Acts 10:43–48*

“43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”



# G

## Once we believe and repent, we need to be baptized immediately.

We need to be baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins as soon as possible, for we could die unexpectedly. In the Bible, when someone believed on Jesus Christ, they immediately baptized him; they did not wait until Sunday.

The jailor and his family were baptized immediately after a midnight earthquake; they did not even wait until daylight.

**“the same hour of the night” “straightway”**

*Acts 16:31–33*

“31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.

32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

**“arose, and was baptized”**

*Acts 9:17–18*

“17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized.”

The verse above is the same event as the verse below.

Ananias had just prayed for Saul/Paul to receive his sight.

**“why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized”**

*Acts 22:16*

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

**“the same day”**

*Acts 2:41*

“41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.”

## **Baptized Immediately**

*Acts 8:35–38*

“35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?

37 And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.

38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.”

## **“When they heard *this*,**

## **they were baptized”**

*(Immediately)*

*Acts 19:2–6*

“2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.

3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

## **The belief is they obeyed St. Peter, and were baptized immediately.**

*Acts 10:44–48*

“44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

We need to be baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins as soon as possible, for we could die unexpectedly.



# H

## Being Baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”

Baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ”  
is complying with the Bible  
based on Biblical consistency (*repetition*).

Baptizing using the descriptive names of God  
(Father, Son, and Holy Ghost)  
is based on a single verse (*Matthew 28:19*).

I believe Biblical consistency reveals the correct understanding.

Is the verbal signature for Christian baptism to be

**“in the name of Jesus Christ”,**

or

**“in the name of the Father, and of the Son,  
and of the Holy Ghost” ?**

Whose **NAME** are we to use?

Does it really matter? Is it important?

Christians in the Bible always used the name of “Jesus Christ”, or “Lord Jesus” etc., as the verbal signature for applying God’s authority to baptism, healing, and the casting out of devils. We have Matthew 28:19, but we cannot find one action in the Bible being verbally signed “in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost”. The Bible talks about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. However, when we study the Bible, we do not find these descriptive names of God being used as the verbal signature for applying God’s authority.

We are to do all (*everything*) in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

**“do all in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

*Colossians 3:17*

“17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.”

**PROBLEM** The traditional interpretation of Matthew 28:19 does not appear to fit the rest of the New Testament. This chapter will show you the problem. Chapter H – Page 1

Matthew 28:19 is part of the instructions Jesus Christ gave to the eleven disciples before he ascended up into heaven.

**“baptizing them in the name of the Father,  
and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”**

*Matthew 28:19*

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”

Nine days later St. Peter instructed people to be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, and the other apostles stood with him. Did St. Peter and the apostles take it upon themselves to change Christ’s instructions in Matthew 28:19, when they instructed the people to be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”? I believe the apostles understood Christ’s instructions/commandment, and they acted accordingly.

### **Nine days after Matthew 28:19**

**“Peter, standing up with the eleven” (the 11 apostles)**

*Acts 2:14*

“14 ¶ But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:”



St. Peter speaking to people who wanted to join Jesus Christ.

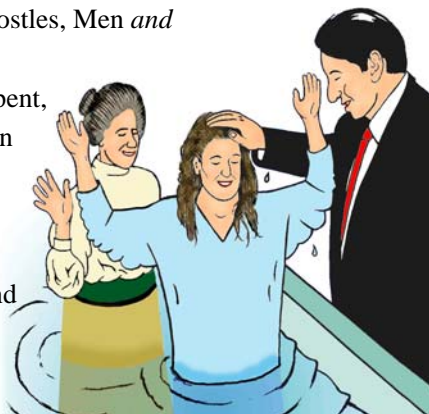
**“Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you  
in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins”**

*Act 2:37–39*

“37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”



Baptism in the name of “Jesus Christ” is important. St. Paul took people who were baptized unto John the Baptist’s baptism and re-baptize them in the name of the “Lord Jesus”.

**“baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

*Acts 19:3–5*

“3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

Why did St. Paul re-baptize people who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist’s baptism? When Christ came on the scene, the followers of John the Baptist were to convert and become followers of Jesus Christ; baptism is the converting ceremony. When St. Paul baptized them in the name of the “Lord Jesus”, they joined and became followers/disciples of Jesus Christ. Water baptism is the ceremony for joining Jesus Christ.

**Baptizing into Jesus Christ, by using his name**

**“baptized into Christ”**

*Galatians 3:27*

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

**“baptized into Jesus Christ”**

*Romans 6:3*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?”

**“and the name of Jesus Christ,  
they were baptized”**

*Acts 8:12*

“12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.”

**“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

*Acts 8:16*

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

**“he commanded them to be baptized  
in the name of the Lord”**

*Acts 10:48*

“48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

**“none other name under heaven given among men,  
whereby we must be saved”** *(the name of “Jesus Christ”)*

*Acts 4:12*

“12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

**Everything was performed in the name of “Jesus Christ”**

***Note the spoken words, the verbal signature.***

**“In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth  
rise up and walk”**

*Acts 3:6–9*

“6 Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk.

7 And he took him by the right hand, and lifted *him* up: and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength.

8 And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God.

9 And all the people saw him walking and praising God:”

**“through faith in his name”** *(the name of “Jesus Christ”)*

*Acts 3:16*

“16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.”

**“by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth”**

*Acts 4:10*

“10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, *even* by him doth this man stand here before you whole.”

**“signs and wonders may be done**

**by the name of thy holy child Jesus”** *(“by the name of”)* *Acts 4:29–30*

“29 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word,

30 By stretching forth thine hand to heal; and that signs and wonders may be done by the name of thy holy child Jesus.”

**Note the spoken words.**

**“Jesus Christ maketh thee whole”**

*Acts 9:34*

“34 And Peter said unto him, Æneas, Jesus Christ maketh thee whole: arise, and make thy bed. And he arose immediately.”

**“in the name of the Lord”**

*James 5:14*

“14 Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord:”

**Note the spoken words, the verbal signature.**

**“I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ”**

*Acts 16:17–18*

“17 The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high God, which shew unto us the way of salvation.  
18 And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.”

**“the devils are subject unto us through thy name”**

*Luke 10:17*

“17 ¶ And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.”

Vagabond Jews, exorcists, attempted to duplicate the actions of St. Paul by attempting to use the verbal signature **“Lord Jesus”**.

**“vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus”**

**“and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified.”**

*Acts 19:13–17*

“13 ¶ Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus, saying, We adjure you by Jesus whom Paul preacheth.

14 And there were seven sons of *one* Sceva, a Jew, *and* chief of the priests, which did so.

15 And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye?

16 And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.

17 And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified.”

**“In my name shall they cast out devils”**

*Mark 16:17*

“17 And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;”

**“casting out devils in thy name”**

*Mark 9:38–40*

“38 And John answered him, saying, Master, we saw one casting out devils in thy name, and he followeth not us: and we forbad him, because he followeth not us.

39 But Jesus said, Forbid him not: for there is no man which shall do a miracle in my name, that can lightly speak evil of me.

40 For he that is not against us is on our part.”

**We need to ask the big question.**

Why can't we find any actions in the Bible  
being verbally signed with  
the descriptive names of God:  
Father, Son, and Holy Ghost?

In the Bible, we find Christians  
performing everything in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

**Believe on the name of “Jesus Christ”**

**“to them that believe on his name”**

*John 1:12*

“12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:”

**“that believing ye might have life through his name”**

*John 20:31*

“31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.”

**“because he hath not believed in the name  
of the only begotten Son of God”**

*John 3:18*

“18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.”

**“that through his name”**

*Acts 10:43*

“43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”

**“written unto you that believe  
on the name of the Son of God;  
that ye may know that ye have eternal life”**

*1 John 5:13*

“13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.”

### **Ask in the name of “Jesus Christ”**

**“If ye shall ask any thing in my name”**

*John 14:12–14*

“12 ¶ Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater *works* than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.

13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

14 If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*.”

**“ask of the Father in my name”**

*John 15:16*

“16 Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.”

### **Peter and John were commanded not to speak or teach in the name of \_\_\_\_\_.**

**“commanded them not to speak at all  
nor teach in the name of Jesus”**

*Acts 4:16–18*

“16 Saying, What shall we do to these men? for that indeed a notable miracle hath been done by them *is* manifest to all them that dwell in Jerusalem; and we cannot deny *it*.

17 But that it spread no further among the people, let us straitly threaten them, that they speak henceforth to no man in this name.

18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus.”

## The name of Jesus Christ

Sometimes preachers offered large sums of money to anyone who could find in the Bible where someone was baptized using the descriptive names of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.



### Why?

They wanted us to search the Scriptures and see for ourselves that Christians always used the name of “Jesus Christ” to activate the power of God. It was a challenge to put us on a path of Biblical discovery. Nothing is more convincing than seeing and discovering things in the Scriptures for ourselves.

### We are to do everything in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

“do all in the name of the Lord Jesus”

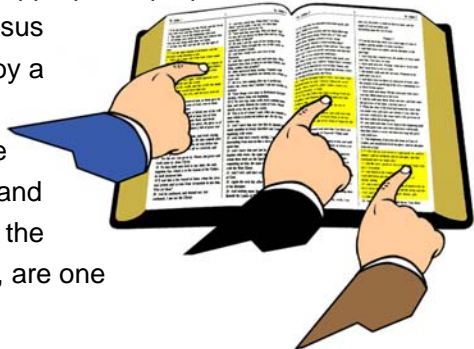
*Colossians 3:17*

“17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.”

Jesus Christ's name is used to activate his authority.

The phrases “In the name of”, and “in the authority of”, are often interchangeable. One's name is used to execute his authority: like a signature. Genuine Christians have the right and the responsibility to use his name/authority for appropriate purposes.

I believe the name of “Jesus Christ”, when properly used by a genuine Christian as the verbal signature, contains the authority of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. This is because the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one and the same God/Deity.





## How can Matthew 28:19 fit the other Bible verses?

**“baptizing them in the name of the Father,  
and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”**

Matthew 28:19

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”

Words have multiple meanings/definitions. The same sentence can be read to mean different things.

### What is Matthew 28:19 really saying?

1. Is it saying we are to use the verbal signature **“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”** ?

2. Is it saying we are to be baptized in the authority of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost? *(The word “name” can be interpreted to mean authority.)*

3. Is it saying we are to be baptized in the NAME: One proper name, “Jesus”, which belongs to the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost? This can gain more strength when we study the Greek word which was translated “and”.

In Matthew 28:19, the word **“name”** is not plural; it is singular: **“baptizing them in the name”** — one name/authority.

Jesus said he came in his Father’s name. This can be read as the Son of man and his Father have the same proper name and authority. Jesus Christ having his Father’s name is appropriate, because he and his Father are one and the same God/Deity. It is believed the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one God, and his name is “Jesus”. The name “*Jesus*” means “Jehovah saves”.

**“I am come in my Father’s name”**

John 5:43

“43 I am come in my Father’s name, and ye receive me not: if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive.”



If we only look at Matthew 28:19, baptizing using the verbal signature **“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”** can appear correct. But the problem remains; the use of this verbal signature does not appear to parallel the rest of the New Testament.

**REMEMBER** For truth, Matthew 28:19 needs to agree with all the verses that use the name of “Jesus Christ”. When Bible verses seem to disagree, the problem is in our interpretation/understanding.

Why do churches baptize using the descriptive names of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost? I believe it is because they see the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, as three separate individual Deity beings, and they want to include everyone. They see baptism in the name of “Jesus Christ” as Son only baptism. But how can there be an everyone, since the Bible declares there is only one God, and he is the only one who is God/Deity.

The next chapter is on the question “Is there one God, or are there three separate individual God/Deity beings who work together in unity?” I believe there is one God, and he branches out and presents himself to mankind as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Since we only have one who is God/Deity, who is there to leave out when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”.



### **The phrase “in the name of” being used for God’s business**

In the King James Version Old Testament, we find the phrase **“in the name of the LORD”**. The word **“LORD”** (*all capital letters*) is a substitute descriptive name for the unpronounceable proper name of God: YHWH.

We do not know how to properly pronounce his name, because it contains no vowels. This proper name of God, YHWH, is in the Old Testament thousands of times; but instead of writing the letters YHWH in the Bible, they wrote the word **“LORD”** (*all capital letters*). Some people trying to pronounce YHWH came up with “JEHOVAH” and “YAHWEH”.

We also find the phrase **“in the name of the Lord”** in the New Testament. In the New Testament the word **“Lord”/“LORD”** means lordship (*Jesus Christ is our Lord*); it is not a substitute name for a proper name. In the New Testament, the proper name of “Jesus” starts being used in the phrase “in the name of \_\_\_\_”

**“in the name of Jesus Christ”**

**“in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

**“In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ”**

We have one instance of the descriptive names of God being placed in the phrase “in the name of \_\_\_\_”: (*in Matthew 28:19*).

**“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”**

### **Conducting business in the name of “Jesus Christ” can be divided into two categories:**

1. Business that does not involve the verbal signature,  
**“In the name of Jesus Christ”.**

We could give a needful drink of water to someone without saying “in the name of Jesus Christ”. Even though nothing was said, it is a form of doing things in the name of, acting for, Jesus Christ.

2. Business that involves the verbal signature,  
**“In the name of Jesus Christ”.**

In some areas Christians need to use the power/authority of Jesus Christ: in baptism; in healing; in casting out demons; etc. In these areas, using the verbal signature “In the name of Jesus Christ” is standard procedure. It is pronouncing Christ's authority upon the action.

The name “Jesus” is not a unique name. The word “Christ” or “Lord” is added to the name “Jesus” to identify which Jesus. The name “Jesus Christ” is referring to the Jesus who is the Christ (*the Messiah*). The name “Lord Jesus” is referring to the Jesus who is our Lord.

The name **Jesus** (*Joshua*) means **JEHOVAH Saves**.

The name **Christ** means **The Messiah**.

## Descriptive Names, and Actual Names

A title/descriptive name is a name that describes someone, or the position they hold.

John Walker had a son attending college.  
He sent him a birthday card containing a check.  
He signed the card with his title/descriptive name **"Dad,"**  
and he signed the check **"John Walker."**

### Now stop and think.

"Father", "Son", and "Holy Ghost",  
are descriptive names of God.

Even "God" is a descriptive name.

In the Bible, we do not find Christians using the following:

In the name of the Son rise up and walk.

In the name of the Son of God rise up and walk.

In the Bible, we find Christ's followers using  
his ACTUAL name to conduct official business.

## Descriptive names, or Proper name

The names of God, "Father", "Son", and "Holy Ghost", are good descriptive names of God. But the Christians in the Bible were repeatedly instructed to use, and did use, the name of "Jesus Christ"/"Lord Jesus" for activating God's authority.

**"and preached unto him Jesus" "and he baptized him"** Acts 8:35-38

35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?

37 And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.

38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him."



Baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ” does not omit the Father and the Holy Ghost, because the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one and the same God. Baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ” is following Biblical instructions based on Biblical consistency.

Anytime we do official business for Jesus Christ, we need to use his actual name. His name, genuinely used as a verbal signature, carries his authority. Genuine Christians have the right and responsibility to use his name/authority for appropriate purposes. When we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of our sins, the power/authority in the name of Jesus Christ is applied to the baptism.

Normally, when we have Biblical questions, we go to our pastor. However, we need to be aware that many pastors have handcuffed themselves to a particular set of beliefs/doctrines: the beliefs of their denomination. Most pastors feel obligated to defend these beliefs, and do not feel free to honestly consider beliefs that appear contrary to them. If a pastor would believe and start teaching things outside his denomination’s beliefs, he might lose his job, maybe a retirement, and might be disassociated from his church family and friends. I am not saying pastors will avoid giving you an honest answer, but they may have strong incentives to avoid considering things that do not agree with their denomination’s beliefs. Some pastors might mentally block (*refuse to consider*) some Bible verses, because they are afraid of the consequences which could result from changing their beliefs. If you are asking a pastor concerning things that are contrary to his church’s beliefs, be aware of the pressure he might be under to defend his church’s beliefs. Genuine pastors are handcuffed to the Bible; they will put the Bible above their church’s doctrines/beliefs.

Biblical study will show everything performed in the Bible, which Christians performed “**in the name of \_\_\_\_\_**”, was executed in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

We find nothing being verbally signed in the Bible using the descriptive names of God:

“in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost”.

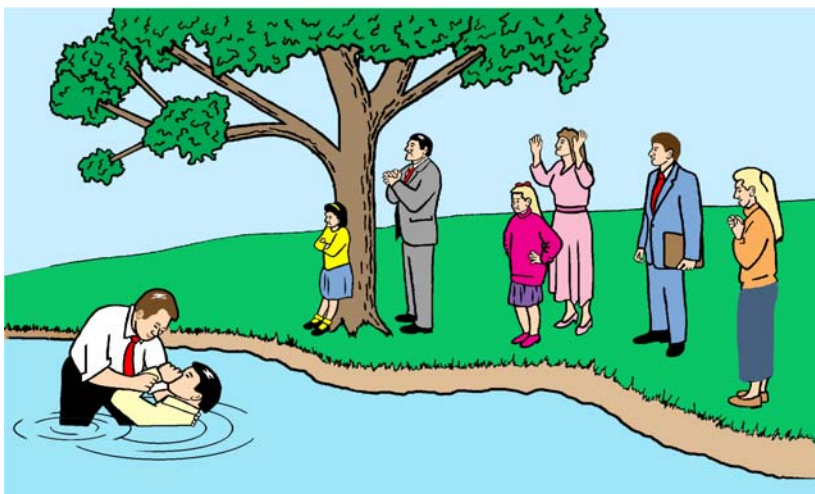
The name of “Jesus Christ” is the verbal signature for activating God’s authority.

It is very important to follow God's instructions to the best of our knowledge and ability. Since you are being told about baptism in the name of "Jesus Christ", it is now your responsibility to prayerfully examine it in the Bible.

Look up the word "name" in an **exhaustive** concordance; you can also do this search on a computer with a Bible program. Look for New Testament verses containing the words "in the name of". On a piece of paper write down all the verses that use the name of "Jesus Christ", "Lord Jesus", etc., as the verbal signature for baptism, healing, casting out devils, etc. On another piece of paper write down all the verses that use the verbal signature "in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost". These papers can be a real eye-opener; the Christian verbal signature will stand out.

Nine days after Christ instructed the eleven disciples/apostles, in Matthew 28:19, we find people desiring to give themselves to (*join*) Jesus Christ; they were asking St. Peter and the other apostles what they needed to do. St. Peter, with the apostles standing with him, told these people to repent and be baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of sins. Then he told them they would receive the "Promise": the "Gift" of the Holy Ghost. All genuine Christians receive the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God*) as a promised gift from God.

*(Twelve disciples minus Judas equals eleven.)*



I believe Biblical consistency reveals the correct understanding.

## **Baptism is the joining/converting ceremony.**

When we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, we are joining/converting to Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.

In the Church at Corinth, some Christians were saying they were of a preacher, naming him. St. Paul sternly pointed out Christians are of Jesus Christ, not a preacher.

**“were ye baptized in the name of Paul?”**

*1 Corinthians 1:12–15*

“12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.

13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?

14 ¶ I thank God that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius;

15 Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name.”

St. Paul said this because baptism is the joining/converting ceremony. Baptizing people in the name of “Paul” would be joining /converting people to St. Paul. The people were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”; they joined/converted themselves to Jesus Christ, not to the preacher who baptized them.

“Father”, “Son”, and “Holy Ghost” are good descriptive names of God. However, we do not see these names being used as the verbal signature.

## a

### **The Bible declares there is only one God; he is God alone, by himself.**

*The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost are one and the same God/Deity; thus no one is being ignored when we baptize in the name of “Jesus Christ”.*

How many Deity beings (Gods) exist? One or Three?

---

How can Jesus Christ be God, and his Son?

---

Is Jesus Christ God (*the one who talked to Abraham*)?  
Or is he a second Deity being who is working in unity with God?

---

Is the Holy Ghost God's own Spirit?  
Or is the Holy Ghost another Deity being  
who is working in unity with God?

---

Are the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,  
three manifestations of the one God/Deity being?  
*(One God [one Deity being] reaching out  
to mankind as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.)*

---

Are the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,  
three separate individual God/Deity beings?  
*(Not one and the same God/Deity being,  
but a team/union of separate God/Deity beings working in unity.)*

---

If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,  
are one and the same Deity being (one God),  
then baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ”  
is simply baptizing in the name of God.

---

How can Jesus Christ be the Son of the Father,  
when his conception was of the Holy Ghost?  
*(It is because the Father and the Holy Ghost  
are one and the same God/Deity being.)*



Understanding the Godhead; what the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are to each other; is a major fork in the road of understanding God. What we believe about the Godhead will affect our interpretation of the Scriptures, including the verses about water baptism.

In this chapter, I will tell you what I believe about the Godhead. I believe many churches/people have an incomplete picture of what the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are to each other. This is partly because the verses that strongly declare there is only one Deity being are seldom taught or studied. We will look at some of these verses shortly.

I find terminology to be an enormous problem when people are discussing the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. Words and phrases mean different things to different people, thus many times the listener is not grasping what is being explained. We use human words and reasoning, attempting to describe Godly things. Human words and reasoning are inadequate, thus they can steer Godly understanding off-base.

I do not believe anyone has a comprehensive understanding of the Godhead, including me. I believe a complete understanding of the Godhead is past human ability. I believe all human explanations of the Godhead fall short, including mine.

Basically, I am pointing out some things about the Godhead which I believe are ignored, or not seen, by many people: mainly the strong repeated declaration that there is only one Deity being (*only one God*). Somehow the one lone God works as the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.



**“For now we see through a glass, darkly”**

*1 Corinthians 13:12*

“12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.”

My intent is to show you more pieces about the Godhead, to broaden your understanding.

## God lives in a place far past human understanding

Human beings cannot make sense of many Biblical statements about the Godhead (*the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*). To the human mind, there are statements which appear to be in opposition to each other. They appear to contradict each other, because the complete understanding is past our human ability to reason and understand.

Human beings live in a box of limitations upon limitations. God has no limitations. Humans have limited understanding; God has complete understanding. In our efforts to understand God, we end up molding our portrayal of God to fit inside what human beings can understand, but God does not fit inside the limited understanding of mankind.

If we would take a finger ring, and try to put the planet Jupiter through the center of the ring, it would not go through, because of its size. Likewise, all the things about God will not fit inside our human understanding/reasoning.

*Isaiah 55:9*

“9 For *as* the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.”

Humans cannot completely understand God, but God lets us understand some things about him.

1. One of the top declarations of the Bible is that only one Deity being (*one God*) exists. This is strongly and repeatedly declared in the Old and New Testaments, often being declared with strong singular pronouns (*he, him, I, me*). He is alone in the area of Deity. He is absolutely the only one who is Deity.
2. The Bible talks about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost: individually; as Deity with interactions; with wills; with communications between them; and uses plural pronouns to refer to them.

Our human mind cannot truly understand how both of the above can fit together. The human mind says it has to be one way or the other (*only one, or three*), yet the Bible talks as both ways are truth together. Our human minds are limited; this limitation blocks us from understanding how everything fits together. Due to the number of Bible verses for both ways (*1 and 2 [above]*), both are Biblically confirmed as truth. Somehow the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, with interactions, are the one lone Deity being: God.

We have one Deity being as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost; not a union of three separate Deity beings (*Gods*) working in unity.

### **Let us look at some Scriptures**

First we will look at a few Bible verses which to the human mind can portray three Deity beings. Then we will look at Bible verses which strongly declare there is only one Deity being.

We will now read some verses which to the human mind can portray two or three.

**“we will come unto him, and make our abode with him”** *John 14:23*

“23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.”

**“the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name”** *John 14:26*

“26 But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.”

**“not my will, but thine”** *Luke 22:42*

“42 Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.”

**The Father knows, but the Son does not know.** *Mark 13:31–32*

“31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.  
32 But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father.”

**“the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost”** *2 Corinthians 13:14*

“14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, *be* with you all. Amen.”

**“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”** *Matthew 28:19*

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”

**“I had with thee before the world was”** *John 17:5*

“5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.”

We cannot stop here, because we would only have part of the picture; we would be missing all the Bible verses that declare there is only one who is God/Deity. If we want truth, the verses we just read need to fit the following oneness verses.

The words “**god**” and “**deity being**” are synonymous; they are interchangeable.

- “**One god**” translates “**one deity being**”.
- “**Three deity beings**” translates “**three gods**”.
- “**Separate deity beings**” translates “**Separate gods**”.

The Bible consistently/repeatedly, in the Old and New Testaments, declares only one God exists, and he is alone in the area of Deity.

This means there is only one Deity being (one God).

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are forms/manifestations of the one lone Deity being, who we call God.

Human logic says it is impossible for the previous verses, and the following verses, to co-exist as truth. However, due to the number of verses on the subject, we know they co-exist as truth.

The following verses dissolve the theory of a union/team of three separate individual God/Deity beings working in unity.

Remembering “**One God**” translates “**One Deity being**”,  
**ask yourself**

**“How many separate Deity/God beings exist”**  
**as you read the following Bible verses.**

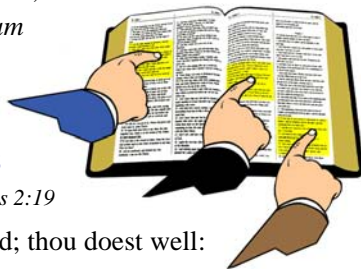
***“I am the LORD, and there is none else,  
there is no God beside me”***

*Isaiah 45:5*

***“5 ¶ I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:”***

**“I am the first, and I am the last;  
and beside me *there is no God*”** *Isaiah 44:6*

“6 Thus saith the LORD the King of Israel,  
and his redeemer the LORD of hosts; I *am*  
the first, and I *am* the last; and beside  
me *there is no God.*”



**“Thou believest that there is one God;  
thou doest well”** *James 2:19*

“19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well:  
the devils also believe, and tremble.”

**“the only wise God”** *1 Timothy 1:17*

“17 Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, *be*  
honour and glory for ever and ever. Amen.”

**“I am the LORD;  
and *there is none else*”** *Isaiah 45:18*

“18 For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that  
formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in  
vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I *am* the LORD; and *there is none else.*”

**“I am God, and *there is none else*”** *Isaiah 46:9*

“9 Remember the former things of old: for I *am* God, and *there is none*  
else; I *am* God, and *there is none like me,*”

**“thou *art* God alone”** *Psalms 86:10*

“10 For thou *art* great, and doest wondrous things: thou *art* God alone.”

**“I, *even I, am* he,  
and *there is no god with me*”** *Deuteronomy 32:39*

“39 ¶ See now that I, *even I, am* he, and *there is no god with me*: I kill, and  
I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither *is there any* that can deliver out  
of my hand.”

**“*there is none beside thee*”** *1 Samuel 2:2*

“2 *There is none* holy as the LORD: for *there is none beside thee*: neither  
*is there any* rock like our God.”

***“there is no God else beside me”***

***“there is none beside me”***

***“I am God, and there is none else”***

*Isaiah 45:21–22*

“21 Tell ye, and bring *them* near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? *who* hath told it from that time? *have* not I the LORD? and *there is* no God else beside me; a just God and a Saviour; *there is* none beside me.

22 Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else.”

***“there is no saviour beside me”***

*Hosea 13:4*

“4 Yet I *am* the LORD thy God from the land of Egypt, and thou shalt know no god but me: for *there is* no saviour beside me.”

*Deuteronomy 6:4*

“4 ¶ Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God *is* one LORD:”

***“there is none like thee,  
neither is there any God beside thee”***

*2 Samuel 7:22*

“22 Wherefore thou art great, O LORD God: for *there is* none like thee, neither *is there any* God beside thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears.”

**Only one deity being**

***“Is there a God beside me?***

***yea, there is no God”***

*Isaiah 44:8*

“8 Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared *it*? ye *are* even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, *there is* no God; I know not *any*.”

***“for there is one God;  
and there is none other but he”***

***“when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him,  
Thou art not far from the kingdom of God”***

*Mark 12:32–34*

“32 And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is none other but he:

33 And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love *his* neighbour as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.

34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him *any question*.”

Due to the number of Bible verses on the subject, we know both ways co-exist as truth. If we choose one side or the other, we are choosing to close our eyes to the other Bible verses, and our mental portrayal of God will be unbalanced or off-base. Somehow the one lone Deity being, the one lone God, is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, with interactions.

The Bible declaring there is only one Deity being (*one God*) is one of the top declarations of the Bible.

Our human minds cannot comprehend how all the different Biblical statements about God, the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, can possibly fit together. We strive to understand them, but our minds insist on paralleling the answers to fit the human world. This is because the human world is the only thing our minds are capable of understanding. Portraying God to parallel the world of human beings happens naturally, and it is a major problem in understanding the Godhead: what the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are to each other.

I believe one being three (*the one lone God/Deity, being Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*) fits the Bible; and the opposite, three being one in purpose (*a team/union of three separate Deity beings working in unity*) fits human understanding.

Talking about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, as persons in unity is selecting words to parallel God to the world of human beings. I do not find the Bible teaching about a team of Deity beings.

I believe the word *persons* is an extremely poor choice of words. I use the word *manifestations* instead of the word *persons* to avoid paralleling God to human beings.

**“The three manifestations of the Godhead.”**

**Manifestations** Forms in which God presents himself, and communicates with mankind.

If we use the word *persons* when talking about God, our minds tend to place human traits and limitations on God. God is immensely different from people: he cannot be paralleled to one person; he cannot be paralleled to three persons; he cannot be paralleled to persons in unity. However, the word *person* may be used correctly when talking about the human side of Jesus Christ.

It is impossible for three human beings to be one and the same human being. This makes it hard for us to visualize how the one lone Deity being (*God*) can be Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, with interactions. We will understand it when we get to Heaven.

Human beings cannot be in multiple bodies, at multiple locations, doing multiple things at the same time; but God can. Since humans cannot do it, it is hard for us to visualize God doing it.

Referring to God as one lone Deity being causes our minds to visualize one person. We start visualizing God likened to our own human spirit, consciousness, awareness, thinking, decision making, feelings, etc.; likened to ourselves without our body; but being perfect, invisible, all knowing, all powerful, etc. But I believe this is visualizing God too much like a human being.

God gives a deeper understanding to the people who are filled with his Spirit. He gives a deeper understanding about himself to people who love him from the bottom of their heart. If we want a deeper understanding about God, we must strive to obey him, and strive to love him with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength. God reveals/shows/manifests himself to the people who truly love him:

**“he that loveth me”**

**“I will love him, and will manifest myself to him”**

*John 14:21*

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

## **Why is it so hard to understand things about the Godhead?**

The Godhead does not parallel anything in our world. We want to say “The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are like this,” or “they are like that”, but we have nothing in our human world to which we can parallel the Godhead. We come up with all kinds of illustrations /explanations to explain the Godhead, but none of them produce a comprehensive understanding of God.

Our reasoning about God is greatly affected by the way humans learn and reason. Our knowledge is remembering our experiences. We remember what we have seen, heard, smelled, touched, tasted, and we apply this knowledge to the things we are learning. We cannot envision/imagine anything that is totally outside our experiences. When the things of God get totally outside our experiences, we cannot comprehend them.



**EXAMPLE** We know the color green, because we have seen it, and we recorded this color in our memory. If we never saw green, we would not be able to envision/imagine it. We cannot describe green to a person who never saw any light or color.

**LIKEWISE** We have a hard time envisioning/imagining how the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, can be the one lone Deity being (*God*), because we have never seen or experienced an individual who can present himself in multiple forms/manifestations at the same time, with interactions.

If we could travel back in time to 1000 A.D. and tell people about our current world, they would not believe us. There would be nothing in their memory to enable them to envision how a satellite can stay up in the sky for years, without being fastened to something. They would not be able to imagine how they could look at a screen and watch things as they happen on the other side of the earth. We might find some people who would accept what we were saying without trying to comprehend them (*faith*). Others would pass these things off as nonsense, because they would not be able to comprehend how these things could be possible.

The same type of comprehension problem is true for us, when we try to comprehend some of the things of God. When we cannot comprehend the how's, why's, etc. of what God is telling us, we need to accept it in faith.

### **Jesus Christ is a double/dual being: the Father in/inside his Son**

A body is a place for spirits to dwell; a body is Biblically called a temple. The God of Abraham, who is a Spirit, dwells inside the body of his Son Jesus Christ without measure. Jesus Christ is the Father in/inside his Son, inseparable. Just as God talked to Moses from the burning bush, the God of Abraham talked to the people through the mouth of his Son. When we talk to Jesus Christ, we are talking to the Father and the Son. When we say Jesus Christ is God, we are declaring he is Almighty God himself, the one who talked to Noah, Abraham and Moses. He is Almighty God, because Almighty God dwells in/inside him without measure.

When we connect the Scriptures, we find the Father dwells in/inside his Son, and we find the Son is full of the Holy Ghost. We find all the fullness of the Godhead dwells inside Jesus Christ **“bodily”**. When we have Jesus Christ, we have Father, Son, and Holy Ghost (*The Father and his Holy Spirit/Ghost dwelling inside the Son*). Thus, Jesus Christ is the complete lone God of Abraham.

**“in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead”**

**“bodily”**

**“ye are complete in him”**

(Jesus Christ) **“the head of all principality and power”** *Colossians 2:9–10*

“9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.

10 And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:”

**“the Father that dwelleth in me”**

*John 14:10*

“10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.”

God (*the God of Abraham*) was inside the body of Christ.

**“To wit, that God was in Christ”**

*2 Corinthians 5:19*

“19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.”

**“Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost”**

*Luke 4:1*

“1 ¶ And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness,”

**Almighty God dwelling inside Jesus Christ without  
measure makes him Almighty God.**

**“God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him”**

*John 3:34*

“34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*.”

Thomas recognized Jesus Christ was both his Lord and Almighty God himself.

**“My Lord and my God”**

*John 20:28*

“28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.”

When we have Jesus Christ, we have All of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost

**Jesus Christ is called**

**“The mighty God”**

**“The everlasting Father,”**

*Isaiah 9:6*

“6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.”

**Jesus Christ is the Father inside his Son.**

**The Father became visible with the body of Jesus Christ.**

**“he that hath seen me hath seen the Father”**

**“from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him”** *(the Father)*

**“Believest thou not that I am in the Father,  
and the Father in me?”**

*John 14:6–11*

“6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

7 If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him.

8 Philip saith unto him, Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us.

9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou *then*, Shew us the Father?

10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.

11 Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake.”

**“he that seeth me seeth him that sent me”**

*John 12:44–45*

“44 ¶ Jesus cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me.

45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.”

The invisible God of Abraham made himself visible in the flesh, in the Son of man (*Jesus Christ*). Angels could now see Almighty God himself.

**“God was manifest in the flesh”**

**“seen of angels”**

*1 Timothy 3:16*

“16 And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.”

### **Jesus Christ spoke the words of God**

Jesus Christ is the Father dwelling in/inside the Son of man. Just as the Father talked to Moses from the midst of the burning bush, he talked and ministered to the people from within his Son. Sometimes Jesus Christ acts and speaks as the Father, and sometimes he acts and speaks as the Son of man. Jesus Christ spoke God's words.

**“as the Father said unto me, so I speak”**

*John 12:49–50*

“49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.

50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.”

**“For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God”**

*John 3:34*

“34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*.”

**“the Father that dwelleth in me”**

*John 14:10*

“10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.”

**QUESTION** If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one and the same God/Deity being, why do we find the following in the Bible: the Son praying to the Father; two wills; etc.?

**ANSWER** Humans cannot totally understand these things. Jesus Christ is Almighty God himself, and mankind (*the Son of man*), together. As a man/human/flesh Jesus Christ was subject to obey

the things of God. Since humans are instructed to pray, he as the *Son of man* prayed. The *Son of man* prayed to God, who was inside him, in heaven, and everywhere else. He also prayed to set an example for us.

Jesus Christ had two wills inside him, because he was both Almighty God and mankind. As mankind, he wanted to avoid dying. As God, he wanted to save our souls. As the *Son of man*, Jesus Christ submitted himself to the will of God, giving us an excellent example of submission to God. (See Luke 22:42)

I believe Jesus Christ is a double/dual being: the Almighty God of Abraham in/inside the human body of his Son.

Jesus Christ is God and a man. His mother Mary was mankind (*flesh*); his Father is God (*Spirit*). He had the body of mankind, so he could shed his blood for us at Calvary. Jesus Christ's flesh and blood makes him a man, and the Spirit of God (*God himself*) dwelling inside him without measure makes him God. Jesus Christ is the Father (*Spirit*) and the Son of man (*flesh*) fused together.

**ILLUSTRATION** We could say the following: **(1)** I am holding the jar; **(2)** I am holding the honey; or **(3)** I am holding only one item (*the jar of honey*). We could say "He who holds the jar holds the honey also". All of these statements would be correct.



**LIKEWISE** The Father dwells inside his Son. Jesus Christ is full of the Holy Ghost. Since the Father and the Holy Ghost are inside Jesus Christ, when we are holding Jesus Christ, we are holding the Father and the Holy Ghost too.

### **Jesus Christ — A dual being**

#### **As the Son of man**

- He hungered.
- He prayed to God.
- He wept.
- He wearied from walking

#### **As Almighty God**

- He fed the multitudes.
- He healed the sick.
- He raised the dead.
- He calmed the sea

**“for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him”**

John 3:34

“34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*.”

**“for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him”** Since all of God, not a measure of God, continually dwells inside the body of Jesus Christ, Jesus Christ is Almighty God in the flesh.

God is omnipresent. God being totally inside Jesus Christ (*the Son of man*) does not hinder him from being everywhere else too. God is a Spirit who is always in every speck of existence. He is transparent. He is unimaginably large; everything that exists, including all outer space, exists inside him. His size allows him to be in the United States and China at the same time. We exist, live, and move, inside God.

**“the Father is in me,  
and I in him”**

John 10:38

“38 But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know, and believe, that the Father *is* in me, and I in him.”

The words *God* and *Deity* have the same meaning. The word *God* is often used as a descriptive name for the one and only God of Abraham. The word *deity* is often used to state the rank/office/power of someone: declaring someone is a god.

When we say Jesus Christ is God, is the word *God* declaring who he is: the one lone God of Abraham? Or is the word *God* declaring what he is: someone who holds the rank of Deity? Once we have someone else who is Deity in addition to Almighty God himself, we have two Gods (*two separate beings who are Deity*). Two Gods is contrary to the Bible. The one lone God (*not person*) manifests himself as the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

We can portray three Gods in the things we say. The following sounds like a list of three Gods:

**“God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost”.**

Let us make ourselves understood by saying the following:  
“God as the Father, God as the Son, and God as the Holy Ghost”.

## Pronoun usage for God

Almost every pronoun in the Bible that refers to God is singular: him, I, me, he, etc. Out of the multitudes of pronouns for God, we do find a few plural pronouns, or a number of singular pronouns in the same verse which seem to indicate more than one. I believe the plural pronouns are concerning the multiple manifestations of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

I will use a tree with three main branches and explain in a simple way how the one and only God can be referred to with plural pronouns. I believe the exact explanation is deeper and more complex. However, I believe this simple explanation will satisfy our needs.

We can talk about each branch of the tree individually.

We can talk about two or three branches.

We can talk about the whole tree.

The right branch, it is full of leaves. - - - **Singular pronoun**


The branches, they are full of leaves. - - - **Plural pronoun**

The whole tree, it is full of leaves. - - - **Singular pronoun**

**NOTE** Singular and plural pronouns are referring to one tree.

**LIKEWISE** Both singular and plural pronouns may be used correctly when talking about God. Plural pronouns are appropriate when we refer to the manifestations of God.

Singular pronouns are appropriate when we talk about the one and only God/Deity being.

**One God/Deity being**   
reaching/branching out in manifestations.

We do not have three separate Deity individuals who have joined themselves in unity (*a team, a union*). We have one God who branches out as three.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are in perfect harmony, because they are three manifestations of the one and only God/Deity being.

## Let us look at an example of intermixed pronouns.

Plural and Singular pronouns are used interchangeably.

Verse 26 uses PLURAL pronouns.

Then Verse 27 converts them to SINGULAR pronouns.

“in our image” becomes “in his *own* image”.

“Let us make” becomes creation by HE: “created he”.

*Genesis 1:26–27*

“26 ¶ And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.”

### Creation

(See *Genesis 1:2*)

1. God's Spirit “the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters”
2. We find God creating.
3. We find credit for creation being given to Jesus Christ.

The Bible says HE rested from HIS work (*singular*).

If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,  
are three separate individual Deity beings,  
they would have rested from their work.

“he rested” “from all his work” “which he had made” *Genesis 2:2*

“2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.”

“alone” “by myself”

“I *am* the LORD that maketh all *things*;  
that stretcheth forth the Heavens alone;  
that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself”

*Isaiah 44:24*

“24 Thus saith the LORD, thy redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I *am* the LORD that maketh all *things*; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself;”



When we study the oneness of God, we need to be aware of the word **“and”** (*Strong’s #2532*). When I study the Greek word from which it was translated, my understanding is it is not always an accumulative conjunction; it does not always mean plus.

My understanding is the Greek word which is sometimes translated **“and”** is a conjunction with little meaning, and it can be translated into many words: *and; even; also; both; then; so; but; for; if; indeed; likewise; or; that; therefore; too; when; yet.*

If we have a Biblical belief which hinges on the word **“and”**, we may need to question if it is an accumulative conjunction, or just a conjunction which connects words and statements. The Bible uses the word **“and”** frequently, when talking about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. I am not a scholar of the Greek language, so check things out for yourself. (*We are in the New Testament when we are studying Greek words.*)

The following verses will make it obvious the word **“and”** is not always an accumulative conjunction; it does not always mean plus. The following verses could be read as God and the Father are two separate individuals, by reading the word **“and”** as an accumulative conjunction.

### **“before God and the Father”**

*James 1:27*

“27 Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world.”

### **“I ascend unto my Father” “and to my God”**

*John 20:17*

“17 Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and *to my God*, and your God.”

### **“unto God and our Father”**

*Philippians 4:20*

“20 ¶ Now unto God and our Father *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.”

We need to be careful when studying the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost. We need to know when the word **“and”** means plus (*an accumulative conjunction*), and when it does not.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one,  
not three separate Deity individuals  
who have joined themselves in unity.

God is immensely different from human beings. He is past our human ability to fully reason and comprehend him.

Whenever any human being tries to explain the Godhead (*the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*), he is attempting to explain God with human words, human reasoning, and human understanding, which are enormously inadequate.

The Bible speaks about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, individually, as Deity, with interactions, wills, and communications between them, while repeatedly and strongly declaring there is only one who is Deity/God.

GOD  
N  
E

I don't believe any human being has a complete understanding of how all the Biblical statements about God (the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost) fit together.

The Bible declares there is only one God. I do not find the Bible talking about three separate Deity individuals /Gods who are working as a team. I believe there is one lone God /Deity who reaches/branches out to mankind as the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

I believe the Holy Ghost (*Holy Spirit*) is simply God's own Spirit, not an additional Deity being.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, do not parallel three persons working in unity. The only way the Bible verses fit together is by believing the one lone God (*the one lone Deity being*) is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, with interactions.

There is only one God. We are not omitting the Father and Holy Ghost when we are baptized in the name of "**Jesus Christ**"; it is following Biblical consistency. When we have Jesus Christ, we have the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

**Not in its proper place** We need to remember the Bible strongly and repeatedly declares there is only one who is God, and he is alone in the area of Deity. This is one of the top declarations of the Bible. This should be in the forefront of our thinking as we study God in the Bible, and we need to be very careful not to reduce this declaration down to a mental footnote.

**We do not have to comprehend everything  
about the Godhead.**

All we need to do is understand the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are the one lone God of Abraham, and the Father dwells inside his Son (*the Son of man*). Jesus Christ is God's Son, and God himself, together in the body of Jesus Christ. We do not have to understand all the how's and why's.



# J

## The thief on the cross was not baptized.

Some people believe baptism is not necessary, because the thief on the cross went to Heaven without being baptized. Sometimes the event of the thief on the cross is wrongfully used as an excuse to ignore Christ's command to be baptized.

### Two reasons why we do not parallel the thief on the cross

1. When the event of the thief on the cross took place, Jesus Christ was still alive; he still had his blood. Thus we can say this event took place under the Dispensation of the Law. The Dispensation of the Law ended (*was fulfilled*) with the shed blood /death of Jesus Christ. If the event of the thief on the cross took place during the Dispensation of the Law, and we live in the Dispensation of Grace, is it correct to parallel ourselves to the thief on the cross? Christian baptism is a Dispensation of Grace ceremony, even though Christian baptism started before the Dispensation of the Law ended.
2. It was totally impossible for the thief to be baptized; he was not declining, dismissing, ignoring, or putting off baptism.

Water baptism is the ceremony for giving ourselves to (*joining*) Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins. When everything is genuine, we come out of the baptism water with our sins remitted, joined to Jesus Christ.

Water baptism is commanded in the Great Commission; it is the will of God. When Jesus Christ tells us to do something and we say "No Thanks", something is wrong with our heart. Genuine Christians strive to do the will of God; we do not look for excuses to disobey him. Declining to obey Christ's instructions is rejecting him as our Lord (*as the one we obey*). Our actions, or non-actions, reveal if Jesus Christ is genuinely our Lord.

Water Baptism is the will of God. If we tell people it is not necessary/essential to do the will of God, we are in conflict with God. We do not want to circumvent doing the Lord's will by calling his will "works", and saying we are not saved by our "works".

If our heart is right towards God, our heart will compel us to follow the Lord's instructions, including water baptism.

**Jesus Christ commands us to be baptized.**  
**Why do some people preach baptism is not necessary?**

This preaching may have evolved from things like the following:

**ILLUSTRATION** A woman's thirty year old son died raping a seven year old girl. He was an evil man all his life, never said a good word, never entered a church, laughed at the things of God, cursed everyone and everything. At the funeral his mother said she knew her son was in Heaven, because she had him baptized as an infant.

Hearing this statement, the preacher started preaching that the baptism ceremony does not save us; we need to accept Jesus Christ as our person Lord and saviour from the depth of our heart. Next, I believe human reasoning said "If the baptism ceremony does not save us, it is not necessary", and people were led off-base. The preacher should have preached that the baptism ceremony by itself does not save us.

Going through the motions of baptism (*the mechanics, physical movements, repeating the right words*) without having a right heart towards God is worthless; it is just getting wet.

Declining to be baptized reveals a heart which is lacking. A right heart in God will not decline to do the will of God.

We need to give our infants/children to God in a ceremony (*dedication, some churches call it baptism*), but when the children grow up and are capable of choosing, they need to give themselves to Jesus Christ from the depth of their heart, being baptized the Bible way.

Water baptism is the ceremony part of giving ourselves to Jesus Christ, and it wears the Biblical tag "for the remission of sins". However, there is more to giving/joining ourselves to Jesus Christ than water baptism. Belief, repentance, and water baptism, is the starting point (*the entrance*) of following Jesus Christ.



**THE QUESTION** “What about the person who is in intensive care, on a respirator, and genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ on his last breath? Do you mean he will go to hell, because he was not properly baptized?”

**ANSWER** I do not believe the Bible answers this question. God is the judge, and he is good and merciful. But to say what God’s judgement is going to be, in this or any situation, is probably our opinion. I believe if someone genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ, God will provide a way for him to do whatever God requires. My studies and experiences tell me God will not abandon anyone who genuinely loves God and has a right heart for God.

**In the Great Commission,  
Jesus Christ instructs us to be baptized.**

*(Jesus speaking)*

**“He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved”**

*Mark 16:16*

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

**“Go ye therefore, and teach all nations,  
baptizing them”**

*Matthew 28 18–19*

“18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”

Baptism is for the remission of our sins. *(Read Chapter C)*

**“be baptized, and wash away thy sins”**

*Acts 22:16*

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

Some people declined to be baptized with the baptism of John the Baptist; they rejected the counsel of God; they rejected God’s path of salvation.

**“rejected the counsel of God against themselves”**

*Luke 7:29–30*

“29 And all the people that heard *him*, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John.

30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him.”

**“even baptism doth also now save us”**

*1 Peter 3:21*

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:”

**If we were not baptized (*immersed/buried*) into Christ,  
are we baptized into his death?**

*Romans 6:3–5*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness of his* resurrection:”

We must not use the event of the thief on the Cross as an excuse to disobey Jesus Christ. If our heart is right, if it is genuinely given to God, we will not be looking for loopholes; our heart will cause us to follow Christ’s instructions, including baptism, to the best of our ability.

No one has the authority  
to take a commandment of Jesus Christ (*baptism*)  
and declare it unnecessary or unessential.

**It is not wise to say “No” to God.**

“46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord,  
and do not the things which I say?”

*Luke 6:46*

**Water Baptism is the will of God.**

We can choose to do his will,  
or we can choose to ignore him.  
Our choice reveals if our heart is given to God

# K

## 1 Corinthians 1:17

### **Christ did not send Paul for the purpose of doing the baptizing.**

“17 ¶ For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect.”

I have heard the above verse being interpreted as preaching was the greater, and baptism was the lesser. But preaching and baptizing are welded together; they are an inseparable pair.

One purpose of preaching the gospel is to get people baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of their sins. Water baptism is the ceremony for joining, putting on, converting to, Jesus Christ (*further than infant sprinkling*). However, joining Jesus Christ involves more than water baptism.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commands his Church to preach the gospel to the whole world, to baptize the people who believe, and to teach the believers to observe/obey Christ's commandments. St. Paul did all three.

### **My understanding of the above verse**

Divisions were starting to form in the church at Corinth. Instead of everybody saying they were of Jesus Christ, some of them started to say they were of their preacher, naming him.

Since the division problem quickly becomes the subject of baptism, I conclude baptism was a major factor of the divisions. I believe some people were saying they were of the preacher who baptized them.

Baptism is an action of joining/converting. Paul reminded them they were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, not in the name of the preacher. In other words, they converted themselves to Christ, not to the preacher.

Paul was glad he was not involved in their division problems any more than he was, due to the few baptisms he performed. Christ sent Paul to preach the gospel. He did not send him for the purpose of personally doing the baptizing. If Paul's actions of performing baptisms were aiding the divisions at Corinth, Paul preferred to let somebody else do the baptizing.



Every genuine Christian is called to do a particular function in the work of Jesus Christ. Paul's calling was to preach the gospel; he was not called to be the baptizer. But when people needed to be baptized, he baptized them.

**“and *that* there be no divisions among you”**

*1 Corinthians 1:10–17*

“10 ¶ Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing, and *that* there be no divisions among you; but *that* ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.

11 For it hath been declared unto me of you, my brethren, by them *which are of the house* of Chloe, that there are contentions among you.

12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.

13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?

14 ¶ I thank God that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius;

15 Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name.

16 And I baptized also the household of Stephanas: besides, I know not whether I baptized any other.

17 ¶ For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect.”

Baptism is a joining/converting ceremony. Baptizing people in the name of “Paul” would be joining/converting people to St. Paul.

*1 Corinthians 3:4–5*

“4 For while one saith, I am of Paul; and another, I *am* of Apollos; are ye not carnal?

5 ¶ Who then is Paul, and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom ye believed, even as the Lord gave to every man?”

## **What did Paul teach about baptism?**

**Paul's teaching on baptism**

*Romans 6:3–5*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness* of *his* resurrection:”

## **Paul taught about being baptized into Christ.**

*Galatians 3:27*

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

## **Paul taught about being buried with Christ in baptism.**

*Colossians 2:12*

“12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.”

## **What did Paul do concerning baptism?**

### **Paul (Saul) was baptized.**

*Acts 9:17–18*

“17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized.”

**Paul and Silas baptized** the Jailor and his family in the middle of the night, right after the earthquake; they did not even wait until morning. They believed baptism was very important.

*Acts 16:32–33*

“32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.

33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

**Paul re-baptized people** who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism. If baptism is not important, why would Paul be asking them about their baptism.

*Acts 19:3–5*

“3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

## Paul baptized

*Acts 16:14-15*

“14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped God, heard *us*: whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul.

15 And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought *us*, saying, If ye have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*. And she constrained us.”

## Paul baptized

*Acts 18:8*

“8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized.”

## Water baptism is a directive from Christ.

### “baptizing them”

*Matthew 28:19-20*

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.”

### “He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved”

*Mark 16:16*

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

In 1 Corinthians 1:17, St. Paul was not expressing that baptism was less important than preaching. Baptism and preaching are welded together. Preaching the gospel results with people being baptized into Jesus Christ.



- **Spiritual baptism**
- **Being born again**
- **Receiving the Holy Ghost**
- **Speaking in tongues**

When I am talking about the Spirit of God (*the Holy Ghost*) dwelling inside us, I am talking about “Almighty God himself” dwelling inside us.

When he, the Spirit of God, is genuinely dwelling inside us, we grow into the spirit of God: we grow into the character, drive, feelings, mood, mind, and determination, of God.

### **Receiving the Holy Ghost is our personal burning bush encounter with God.**

Moses went to see a burning bush, and he personally met God. This encounter with God changed the rest of his life.

Likewise, when we receive the Holy Ghost, we personally meet Almighty God. Meeting God takes us from believing there is a God, to knowing God. This encounter with God changes the rest of our life.

### **The Holy Ghost is the center of all genuine Christianity.**

Genuine Christianity causes a U-turn in a person’s life. A mean, foulmouthed, self-centered, sinner attends church. During the service the Spirit of God (*the Holy Ghost*) touches his heart and conscience, and he totally gives himself to Jesus Christ, obeying Acts 2:38. He walks out of church a changed man: being kind; full of love; considerate; soft spoken; etc. His wife and the people who know him say “He is not the same person. It is as if someone else is living inside his body.” This is because he met God, and walked out of church with the Spirit of God (*God himself, the Spirit of Christ*) dwelling inside him, molding him. Everyone who genuinely receives the Holy Ghost becomes a new/changed person.

The Bible tells us, if we do not have the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of Christ*) dwelling inside us, we do not belong to Christ yet.

**“Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”**

**“dwell in you”** *Romans 8:8–9*

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.

9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that

the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

### **Receiving the Holy Ghost**

The Spirit of God entering us, to constantly dwell inside us, is what completes us into a genuine Christian. The Holy Ghost is how we communicate/connect with God.

**“the Spirit of God”** and **“the Spirit of Christ”** are one and the same.

**“But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you”**

*Romans 8:11*

“11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.”

**“The Spirit itself beareth witness”**

*Romans 8:16*

“16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:”

**“as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God”**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

Being born again (*being born of the Spirit*) refers to receiving the Holy Ghost. Without the Holy Ghost we are blind concerning the things of God.

**“cannot see”** (*cannot perceive*)

*John 3:3*

“3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

## **God is in the salvage business.**

God takes people whose lives are totally a mess/wreck, full of all kinds of sin, and he salvages/molds them into Godly people.

We may ask "How can I get God to salvage me?" First we must believe Jesus Christ is the son of God, and totally accept him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour. We need to give ourselves to Jesus Christ by obeying Acts 2:38. We need to love God with all our heart, mind, strength, and soul. God is looking for people with a right heart. When the Holy Ghost is dwelling inside us, God will salvage/mold us into Godly people as we cooperate with him.

If we obeyed Acts 2:38, and still do not have the Holy Ghost dwelling inside us, usually the problem is we have not totally given ourselves to Jesus Christ (*100% from the depth of our heart*). We might have something/someone standing between us and God; God is not first. We need to get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, and praise him from the depth of our heart; this gets God's attention. When we have God's attention, we need to pray for help in giving ourselves completely to him. We need to truly give up our way for God's way? The Bible tells us to ask God for the Holy Ghost, and it also says God gives the Holy Ghost to the people who obey him.

### **Some interchangeable names for the Spirit of God**

- Holy Ghost • Holy Spirit • Spirit of Christ • Spirit of the Lord
  - Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead
- Spirit of Truth • The Promise • God • Spirit of God.
- The Comforter • Christ in you • Spirit (*with a capital S*)

### **We need the Holy Ghost to separate us from sin.**

Sin controls everyone who does not have the Holy Ghost dwelling inside them. If we do not have the Holy Ghost, we are in bondage/addicted/handcuffed to sin of some kind. Without the Holy Ghost, sin is leading/controlling us. We do not have the power to break the chains of sin by ourselves. We may be able to stop doing a sin for a season, but without the Holy Ghost, we will most likely fall back to doing it again. The only way to be freed from sin's handcuffs is to have the Holy Ghost dwelling inside us, and to continue to follow the leading of the Holy Ghost.

**ILLUSTRATION** A man was required to lift a two thousand pound object, and set it in place. He attempted to lift the object, but he could not budge it. Someone watching him said “You cannot lift it by yourself; you need to use the crane.” So the man got the crane, and lifted the object into place.

Just as the man was too weak to lift the object into place by himself, we are too weak to break away from the chains of sin by ourselves. Just as the man needed the crane to lift the object into place, we need the Holy Ghost to break our addiction/handcuffs to sin. As we follow the leading of the Holy Ghost, we are walking away from sin, growing upward in the way of righteousness. With the hand-cuffs of sin broken, we are free to choose to follow the leading of the Holy Ghost. We are free to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

When we receive the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God*), there will be a gigantic change in our lives. Our sinful life becomes past tense. We no longer live a life of hurting others, having immoral sex, stealing, lying, etc. However, we are not instantly perfect, but the Holy Ghost will keep molding, grinding, polishing, and refining us deeper and deeper into righteousness, as we cooperate with God.

Christ sheds the Holy Ghost, who is inside him, a part of him, upon all genuine Christians; thus we have the phrase “Christ in you”. A genuine Christian is a Holy Ghost filled person, a person with a perfect heart toward God, someone who always desires and strives to live righteously/Godly. However, being human, we still blunder; we do not totally understand all the ways of God. But the Holy Ghost will be continually teaching us the ways of God, and we will grow deeper into perfection as God leads us into righteousness. The Holy Ghost will be continually upgrading and comforting us the rest of our current lives.



**“Being then made free from sin”**

“18 Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.”

(Romans 6:18)

The following interchangeable phrases are used to refer to the Holy Ghost entering someone for full-time residence.

- Receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost
- Being Filled with the Holy Ghost
- Being baptized with the Holy Ghost
- Being born of the Spirit • Being born again
- Receiving the Promise • Being endued with power
- Spiritual baptism • Plus more . . .

The word *baptism* means immersion/dip. Spiritual baptism is being immersed into the Spirit of God, being saturated with the Holy Ghost.

### **Let us look in the Bible and see what we find about the Holy Ghost**

Christ is talking to the apostles, right before his ascension.

**“wait for the promise”** (*The Promise is the Holy Ghost*) *Acts 1:4–5*

“4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.

5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.”

***Nine days later, on the day of Pentecost***

**“they were all filled with the Holy Ghost,  
and began to speak with other tongues,  
as the Spirit gave them utterance”**

*Acts 2:1–4*

“1 ¶ And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.

2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.

3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”



St. Peter started preaching shortly after the people received the Holy Ghost. The following was part of his preaching:

**“the promise of the Holy Ghost”**

**“which ye now see and hear”** (*speaking in tongues*)

*Acts 2:33*

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

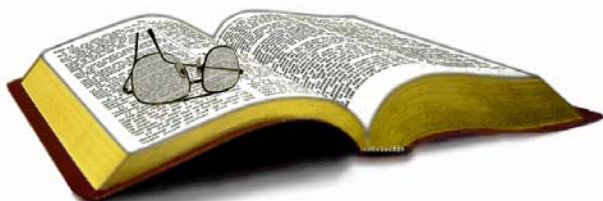
**Receiving the Holy Ghost (*the promise*) is for**

**“as many as the Lord our God shall call”**

*Acts 2:38–39*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”



**Born of the Spirit** (*Receiving the Spirit of God, the Holy Ghost*) *John 3:5*

“5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.”

**“the Spirit of truth”** (*the Holy Ghost*)

**“shall be in you”**

*John 14:15–17*

“15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments.

16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

17 *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”

**“the Spirit of truth”** *(the Holy Ghost)*

**“he will guide you into all truth”**

*John 16:13*

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

**“But the Comforter, *which is the Holy Ghost*”**

**“he shall teach you”**

*John 14:26*

“26 But the Comforter, *which is the Holy Ghost*, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.”

**“*There is therefore now no condemnation to them*”**

**“who walk” “after the Spirit”**

*(who follow the leading of the Spirit of God)*

*Romans 8:1*

“1 ¶ *There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*”

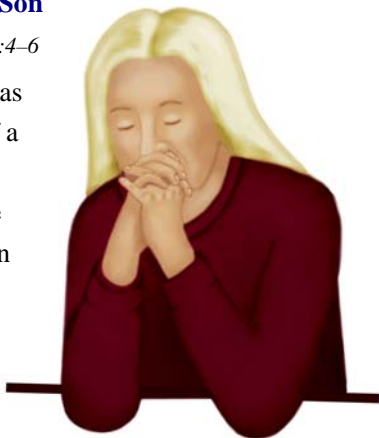
**“God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son  
into your hearts”**

*Galatians 4:4–6*

“4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.”



**The Spirit of Christ, the Holy Ghost**

**“which is Christ in you”**

*Colossians 1:27*

“27 To whom God would make known what *is* the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:”

## Who is to receive the Holy Ghost?

**“the Spirit,  
which they that believe on him  
should receive”** (*believe on Christ*)

*John 7:38–39*

“38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)”

## The promise is the Holy Ghost.

**“For the promise is unto you, and”**

**“even as many as the Lord our God shall call”**

*Acts 2:39*

“39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

## Did we ASK God for the Holy Ghost?

**“to them that ask him”**

*Luke 11:13*

“13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?”

## Do we OBEY Jesus Christ?

**“the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given  
to them that obey him”**

*Acts 5:32*

“32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.”



## Why do some people maintain we need to speak in tongues in order to go to Heaven?

All genuine Christians have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them. The Bible plainly declares if we do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside us, we do not belong to Jesus Christ yet.

Speaking in tongues occurred when the people in the New Testament received God's Spirit (*were baptized with the Holy Ghost*). Speaking in tongues did not just happen on the day of Pentecost, it continued happening to other people as they received the Holy Ghost. We do not find any Biblical evidence anyone received the Holy Ghost without speaking in tongues.

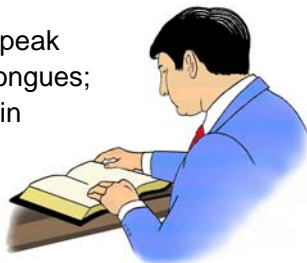
**IT IS BELIEVED** Speaking in tongues is what naturally happens when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost. The belief concludes, if we did not speak in tongues, we did not receive the Holy Ghost. Speaking in tongues is seen as the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost. People base their belief on the Biblical events, what happened to them, and what they see happening in their church. It is believed the same thing happens to us, as happened to the people in the Bible, when we receive the Holy Ghost.

In the Bible, the moment the people received the Holy Ghost could be witnessed by sight and **sound**.

**“he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear”** (In Acts 2:33)

The Bible does not teach us to identify who has the Spirit of God dwelling inside them by the speaking in tongues. The Bible teaches us to identify who has the Spirit of God dwelling inside them by the genuine fruit of the Spirit in their life. The genuine fruit of the Spirit of God is always found in a person who has the Holy Ghost dwelling inside him, leading him.

The Bible does not command us to speak in tongues. In fact, we cannot speak in tongues; it is an action caused by God. Speaking in tongues is not what we do; it is what happens to us. Our part is to draw nigh to God, loving him with our all, and totally yielding ourselves to him.



If we want to speak in tongues, we keep drawing closer and closer to God, loving and praising him from the uttermost depth of our heart, until we have our burning bush encounter with God.

## **The main thing which adds strength to my belief concerning speaking in tongues**

Genuine Christianity causes a U-turn in a person's life. A mean, foulmouthed, self-centered sinner attends church. The Holy Ghost touches his heart and conscience, and he genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ from the uttermost depth of his heart, obeying Acts 2:38. He is filled with the Holy Ghost, and speaks in tongues. He walks out of church a changed man: being kind; full of love; considerate; soft spoken; etc. This is because he met God, and walked out of church with God dwelling inside him, molding him. He is not perfect, but he is definitely changed for the good.

I witness this change for the good happening when someone is genuinely filled with the Holy Ghost and speaks in tongues, and wholeheartedly continues in the genuine ways of God. Seeing this change taking place affects my belief about speaking in tongues.

Receiving the Holy Ghost is like opening our eyes and finding ourselves in a brand-new world, a world where God is Spiritually tangible. Tangibly feeling God, and knowing beyond a shadow of a doubt it is genuine, is an awesome and pleasurable feeling. People who have genuinely spoken in tongues, danced in the Spirit, sang in the Spirit etc., should hold tight to these one on one experiences with God. Feeling God overwhelming us is an awesome feeling and experience. These one on one experiences greatly accelerate us in God.



## **Let us look at some Scriptures concerning the Spirit of God coming upon people.**

In the Old Testament, when the Spirit of God came upon people, they often broke out speaking the words of the Lord (*prophesying*).

**“I have put my words in thy mouth”**

*Jeremiah 1:9*

“9 Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth.”

In the Old Testament, God’s Spirit came upon a few of his people, to give guidance to all of his people.

*Numbers 11:24–25*

“24 ¶ And Moses went out, and told the people the words of the LORD, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the tabernacle.

25 And the LORD came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, *that*, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.”

In the Old Testament the Spirit of God came upon a small percentage of God’s people. Moses desired that all the Lord’s people would have the Spirit of God upon them.

**“all the LORD’S people”**

*Numbers 11:29*

“29 And Moses said unto him, Enviest thou for my sake? would God that all the LORD’S people were prophets, *and* that the LORD would put his spirit upon them!”

Then we find a prophecy in the book of Joel proclaiming God was going to pour out his Spirit upon all flesh on a future date (*the Promise*). He was going to pour out his Spirit upon all his people: great and small; male and female; etc. From the day of Pentecost, the Spirit of God is for everyone who truly believes on the Lord Jesus Christ.

**“I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh” (*the Promise*)**

*Joel 2:28–29*

“28 ¶ And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:

29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.”

In the New Testament before Pentecost, we find God's Spirit continuing to come upon a few selected people, causing them to prophesy.

### **John the Baptist's father**

*Luke 1:67*

“67 ¶ And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Ghost, and prophesied, saying,”

John the Baptist proclaimed Jesus Christ would baptize us with the Holy Ghost (*immerse us into the Holy Ghost, give us the Holy Ghost*)

### **“he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost”**

*Mark 1:6–8*

“6 And John was clothed with camel's hair, and with a girdle of a skin about his loins; and he did eat locusts and wild honey;

7 And preached, saying, There cometh one mightier than I after me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose.

8 I indeed have baptized you with water: but he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost.”

### **“the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost”**

*John 1:29–34*

“29 ¶ The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.

30 This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me: for he was before me.

31 And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel, therefore am I come baptizing with water.

32 And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him.

33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.

34 And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God.”

### **“he shall give you another Comforter,**

**that he may abide with you for ever”** (*the Holy Ghost*) *John 14:15–17*

“15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments.

16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

17 *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”

**Believers started to receive the Holy Ghost, AFTER Jesus was glorified (*after he ascended up into heaven*).**

**“for the Holy Ghost was not yet given;  
because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)”**

*John 7:37–39*

“37 ¶ In the last day, that great *day* of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.

38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.

39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)”

**“for if I go not away,  
the Comforter will not come unto you” (*the Holy Ghost*)**

*John 16:7*

“7 ¶ Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you.”

After Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, the apostles and the followers of Christ were to wait in Jerusalem until they received the Holy Ghost: the Promise.

**“but wait for the promise of the Father”**

*Acts 1:4–9*

“4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.

5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.

6 ¶ When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?

7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.

8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.”

*Luke 24:49*

“49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.”



About 120 people waited in Jerusalem to receive the Holy Ghost, including Jesus' mother.

*Acts 1:13–15*

“13 And when they were come in, they went up into an upper room, where abode both Peter, and James, and John, and Andrew, Philip, and Thomas, Bartholomew, and Matthew, James *the son* of Alphaeus, and Simon Zelotes, and Judas *the brother* of James.

14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brethren.

15 ¶ And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said, (the number of names together were about an hundred and twenty,)”

*(In the next 3 pages, we will be in one chapter of the Bible.)*

They waited in Jerusalem to receive the Holy Ghost. When they received the Holy Ghost, all of them, not a percentage of them, spoke in other tongues (*other languages*). Note the word **“all”**.

**“they were all filled with the Holy Ghost,  
and began to speak with other tongues”**

*Acts 2:1–4*

“1 ¶ And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.

2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.

3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

**“how hear we every man in our own tongue”**

*Acts 2:5–13*

“5 ¶ And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.

6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.

7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?

8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,

10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,

11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.

12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?

13 Others mocking said, These men are full of new wine.”

**“this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel”**

**“I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh”**

*Acts 2:14-21*

“14 ¶ But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all ye that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:

15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is *but* the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:

20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come:

21 And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.”

We find four accounts in the Bible of people receiving the Holy Ghost. Observers could watch them receive the Holy Ghost, in all four accounts.

**“he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear”**

*Acts 2:33*

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

The words **“pour”** and **“shed”** are translated from the same Greek word. They are used to show future tense, and past tense.

**“I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh”**

**“he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear”**

After seeing the Christians speaking in tongues, and hearing St. Peter preach, observers were stirred in their hearts and were convicted. They asked St. Peter and the apostles “**what shall we do?**”. Then St. Peter instructed them on how to join Jesus Christ.

### **The Promise is God’s promise to give us the Holy Ghost.**

**“and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost”**

*Acts 2:36–39*

“36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

St. Peter continued preaching, and 3000 souls were baptized into Christ. Then they proceeded forward in the ways of God.

*Acts 2:40–42*

“40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.

41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.

42 ¶ And they continued stedfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.”

In the Bible we find four accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost (*the Promise of the Father which was to be poured out upon all genuine believers, after Christ was glorified*). Let us examine these four accounts.

The first account was on the day of Pentecost, and we have just gone over it. Onlookers saw and heard the recipients of the Holy Ghost speaking in tongues, as the Spirit of God gave them utterance.



## The account at Cornelius's House

Cornelius was a Gentile (*a person who was not of the Jewish race*). Ordinarily God did not communicate or deal with Gentiles. In Acts chapter 10, we find God sending St. Peter to preach to the Gentiles at Cornelius's house. When St. Peter was preaching, ALL the Gentiles were filled with the Holy Ghost and spoke in tongues.

**“the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word”**

How did they know these Gentiles received the Holy Ghost?

**“For they heard them speak with tongues”**

The Holy Ghost falling upon Gentiles, and speaking through them, seemed unorthodox to the Christian Jews (*Jews who had accepted Jesus Christ as the Messiah*). In the past, God did not usually deal with Gentiles. Now they witnessed God pouring out his Spirit upon them, causing them to speak in tongues. When they saw the Gentiles speaking in tongues, they knew God had accepted the Gentiles as part of his family. St. Peter knew they needed to be baptized into Jesus Christ.

Observers could HEAR them receive the Holy Ghost.

**“For they heard them speak with tongues”**

ALL of them spoke in tongues, not a percentage of them.

**“the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word”**

*Acts 10:43–48*

“43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.

44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

*(Read the whole account: Acts 10:1 through Acts 11:18)*

## **The account at Ephesus**

Paul found some disciples of John at Ephesus. He started asking them questions to see how far they had advanced in God.

**“Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?”**

When they told Paul they did not know anything about the Holy Ghost, Paul knew they had not advanced to that point. Then he stepped backward in his questioning and asked

**“Unto what then were ye baptized?”**

With this question, Paul found out they were not baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”; they were only baptized unto John the Baptist’s baptism.

John the Baptist was the forerunner of Christ. He was getting things ready for Jesus Christ to enter the scene. When Christ came onto the scene, the followers of John the Baptist were to convert and become followers of Jesus Christ. Baptism is the ceremony for converting to (*joining*) Jesus Christ. They converted to (*joined*) Jesus Christ by being baptized in his name: **“Lord Jesus”**.

After St. Paul re-baptized these individuals in the name of the **“Lord Jesus”**, he laid his hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost and spoke in tongues.

**Onlookers could have heard and seen the event, because  
“they spake with tongues, and prophesied”**

*Acts 19:1–6*

“1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,

2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.

3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

(They did not receive the Holy Ghost until they were baptized into Christ.)

## The Samaria account

In Samaria we find people who were stirred and convicted by the Spirit of God. Being stirred and convicted, they believed on and were baptized into Jesus Christ. *(Verse 16 verifies they were baptized in the name of the “Lord Jesus”).* Yet the Bible proclaims they did not receive the Holy Ghost; receiving the Holy Ghost was a step further. At this point we have baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost.

### How did they know

these baptized believers  
did not receive the Holy Ghost?

Was it because they did not see and hear them speaking in tongues, like the other recipients of the Holy Ghost?

They knew the Gentiles received the Holy Ghost at Cornelius's house, **“For they heard them speak with tongues”**.  
*(In Acts 10:46)*

The apostles sent Peter and John to Samaria. When they arrived they prayed for these baptized believers. They laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

This account does not say anything about speaking in tongues. The Bible declares Simon SAW them receive the Holy Ghost, and he wanted to have the power, so at the touch of his hands people would receive the Holy Ghost.

If Simon merely observed Peter and John laying their hands on people in prayer, he would not have tried to buy this power. Simon already had the ability to lay his hands on people and pray for them.

Simon saw what happened when Peter and John laid their hands upon these people. What did Simon observe? It is reasonable to assume people receiving the Holy Ghost would have similar experiences. In the other accounts we find observers could see and hear the people speaking in tongues. It is reasonable to conclude Simon saw the same.

**“that they might receive the Holy Ghost”**

**“(For as yet he was fallen upon none of them)”**

*Acts 8:12–20*

“12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.

14 ¶ Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John:

15 Who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost:

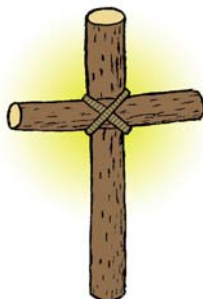
16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)

17 Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

18 And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles’ hands the Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money,

19 Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost.

20 But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money.”



I might say “I believe”,  
but have I received the Holy Ghost  
since I believed?

People in the Bible spoke in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost. It is reasonable to believe we should have the same experience when we receive the Holy Ghost.

**MIND AUTHENTICITY** Genuine speaking in tongues is produced as the Spirit of God gives (*causes*) the utterance. If the Spirit of God is not giving the utterance, then it is not the speaking in tongues that is found in the Bible.

The notion that everyone receives the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God*) instantly upon believing on the Lord Jesus Christ runs into Biblical problems. I cannot find any Biblical support for this belief.

- We find some people who instantly upon believing on Jesus Christ received the Holy Ghost (*Acts 10:43–46*).
- We find baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost. They received the Holy Ghost on a later date. (*Acts 8:12–17*)
- St. Paul asked people if they received the Holy Ghost since they believed (*or when they believed*). What reason would there be for even asking this question, unless some people did not instantly receive the Holy Ghost when they believed?

**“Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?”** *Acts 19:1–2*

“1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,

2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.”

**All genuine Christians have the Holy Ghost  
dwelling inside them.**

**“Know ye not that ye are the temple of God,  
and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?”** *1 Corinthians 3:16–17*

“16 ¶ Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?

17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which *temple* ye are.”

**“know ye not that your body is  
the temple of the Holy Ghost  
which is in you”** *1 Corinthians 6:19–20*

“19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God’s.”



**“as God hath said, I will dwell in them”**

*2 Corinthians 6:16*

“16 And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in *them*; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.”

**“the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us”**

*2 Timothy 1:14*

“14 That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us.”

**“hereby we know that he abideth in us,  
by the Spirit which he hath given us”**

*1 John 3:24*

“24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.”

**“God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son  
into your hearts”**

*Galatians 4:6*

“6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.”

**“If we love one another,  
God dwelleth in us,  
and his love is perfected in us”**

*1 John 4:12–13*

“12 No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.

13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit.”

**“Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God,  
God dwelleth in him, and he in God”**

**“he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God,  
and God in him”**

*1 John 4:15–16*

“15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

16 And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.”

**All genuine Christians follow the leading  
of the Spirit of God.**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

**“Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,  
he is none of his.”**

*Romans 8:8–9*

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.

9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

**“Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit,  
he cannot enter into the kingdom of God”**

*John 3:5*

“5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.”

### **How can we know who is following the leading of God’s Spirit?**

A person who is following the leading of God’s Spirit continually grows deeper and deeper into the fruit of God’s Spirit. Genuinely having the fruit of the Spirit in our life reveals we are following the leading of the Spirit of God. *(The fruit of the Spirit is all the good things the Spirit of God produces in a Christian.)*

People can see the fruit of the Spirit in a genuine Christian’s life: the way he lives; what he does; what he says; etc. However, only a genuine Spirit filled Christian can accurately identify the genuine fruit of the Spirit of God. People who do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them can misidentify the genuine fruit of the Spirit, because they are judging with their intellect.

*Galatians 5:22–23*

“22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,

23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.”

*Ephesians 5:9*

“9 (For the fruit of the Spirit *is* in all goodness and righteousness and truth;)”

When we see a tree full of peaches, we know it is a peach tree. When we see a tree full of lemons, we know it is a lemon tree.

**LIKEWISE** When we see a person who is genuinely full of the fruit of the Spirit of God, we know he/she is a genuine Christian who is following the leading of the Spirit of God.

## A Summary Path

- God, through the prophet Joel, promises to pour out his Spirit upon all his people: great and small; male and female; ordinary people and Church leaders; etc.
- We find John the Baptist proclaiming Christ would baptize people with the Holy Ghost (*immerse them into the Holy Ghost*).
- Before Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he instructed his disciples to wait in Jerusalem until they received the promise of the Holy Ghost.
- About 120 followers of Jesus Christ, including the mother of Jesus, waited in Jerusalem for the promise of the Holy Ghost.
- On the day of Pentecost Christ's followers received the promise of the Holy Ghost. When they received the Holy Ghost, all of them broke out speaking in tongues (*in foreign languages*) as the Holy Ghost gave them utterance (*put the words in their mouth*).
- The people who heard them speaking in tongues were amazed /marveled. They were hearing the Galileans (*a people who were considered uneducated*) speaking in many foreign languages.
- **Then St. Peter stood up and told everyone:** *Act 2:16–18*

“16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:

18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:”

- (*speaking in tongues*) *Acts 2:33*

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

- (*The promise is the Holy Ghost.*)

**“For the promise is unto you, and to your children,  
and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord  
our God shall call”**

*Acts 2:39*

“39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

- In Acts 8:12–16, we find baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost. They received the Holy Ghost on a later date. It is possible to be a believer who is baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus and still not have the Holy Ghost.
- In Acts 19:1–7, we find people who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism, who did not receive the Holy Ghost until they were re-baptized in the name of the “Lord Jesus”.
- In some Biblical accounts, people received the Holy Ghost when Holy Ghost filled Church leaders laid their hands upon them. We need to note all of these believers were already baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus (*Acts 8:16–17, 19:5–6*).
- If we want to receive the Holy Ghost, we need to repent and be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, and ask God for the Holy Ghost. We need to be sure to give ourselves to Jesus Christ 100%, desiring to have him first in our hearts and lives.

## **Ask God**

**“your Heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit  
to them that ask him”**

*Luke 11:13*

“13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?”

## **Obey God**

**“the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given  
to them that obey him”**

*Acts 5:32*

“32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.”

**“if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you.  
Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,  
he is none of his.”**

*Romans 8:8–9*

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.

9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

To be a genuine Christian and go to Heaven, we need the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God*) dwelling inside us: teaching us, leading us, guiding us, inspiring us, convicting us, and molding us into righteousness. We need the power of the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit who is in Christ*) to perform the will of God. The Holy Ghost is our real source of strength and understanding.

Genuine Christians connect/communicate with God through the Holy Ghost. We are Spiritually blind without the Holy Ghost. We cannot see, perceive, behold, know, or discern, the deeper things of God, without the Holy Ghost dwelling inside us

### **What people do not realize**

If we knew Jesus Christ was in a room, many people would run to him: to talk with him; to touch him; to see and hear him. All these things (*seeing, touching, hearing*) are in the physical world.

Most people do not realize they can get this close to God in the Spiritual world; God is Spiritually tangible. We can get closer and closer to God by loving and praising him from the uttermost depth of our heart. God hears our heart loving and praising him, and he comes to us. However, if the praises are not genuinely coming from our heart, the words do nothing.

If we have given ourselves completely to Jesus Christ, if our main goal in life is to do his will, if we love him with all our heart, mind, soul and strength, if we get down on our knees with our hands lifted high toward God, if we love and praise him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart (*may be done in private*), if we do this for a period of time, we have a good possibility the Spirit of God will come over us as never before. When the Spirit of God comes over us to this magnitude, we may speak in tongues, dance in the Spirit, etc. We need to be careful not to put forth an effort to speak utterances. When we speak in tongues, God is the one doing it; we just listen to the words pouring out of our mouth. God gives us the ability to quench the Spirit of God, so we need to be careful not to quench the Spirit of God, and block speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc. We need to relax and let God continue. If this happens to you, you will be feeling God as you never felt him before; you will know you are in the presence of God. If this happens to you, remember you still need to obey Acts 2:38. If we just go through the motions, with a heart which is not totally given to God, nothing will happen.

## Why do genuine Christians desire to speak in tongues, dance in the Spirit, etc.?

When we are genuinely speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc., God is Spiritually tangible (*personally with us, exceedingly*); it is extremely pleasurable to feel and love God to this magnitude.

People who have never genuinely spoken in tongues, or danced in the Spirit, cannot imagine this thrilling interaction with God. If you truly love God, you want these interactions with him. These interactions are not what you do; they are what happens to you.

If you want these interactions with God, you need to put forth an intensive effort to draw yourself closer and closer to God with a right heart, including striving to obey him in all things. You need to get down on your knees, raise your hands up towards God, praise him, and extremely love him from the uttermost depth of your heart (*praise Jesus Christ out loud in privacy; do it for a period of time*). Remember, part of loving God is obeying him; obey Acts 2:38

Did I receive the Holy Ghost,  
since (*or when*) I believed?



# AA

## Speaking in tongues

*(The Spirit of God causing a person to speak in a language unknown to them.)*

Getting involved in the things of God is getting involved in the good side of the supernatural.

### Why should we be concerned about speaking in tongues?

All genuine Christians have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them. The Bible plainly declares, if we do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside us, we do not belong to Jesus Christ yet. (*John 3:5, Romans 8:8–14*).

Speaking in tongues occurred when the people in the New Testament received the Spirit of God. It did not happen once, it continued happening to other people as they received the Holy Ghost. We have no Biblical evidence anyone received the Holy Ghost without speaking in tongues.

Many people cannot imagine themselves speaking in tongues. It just seems unnatural, strange, and foreign to them. They prefer to leave it alone, telling themselves “Speaking in tongues is not for me.”

We do not want to make decisions before we do an honest and prayerful Bible study. When we decide things first, like deciding speaking in tongues is not for us, then hunt for Bible verses to support our decision/belief, it is very likely we will end up molding, shaping, and rationalizing our interpretation of the Scriptures to support what we want to believe. The Bible is to mold our beliefs; our beliefs are not to mold the interpretation of the Scriptures.

We must not be afraid to prayerfully and honestly examine what the entire Bible has to say about speaking in tongues. If we reject speaking in tongues, are we rejecting what God has for us? Let us put our trust in God to give us the correct understanding.

When people imply you need to speak in tongues in order to go to heaven, they are saying “You need to have your burning bush encounter with God (*meet God, receive the Holy Ghost*)”, because we connect to God through the Holy Ghost. They read in the Bible (*repeatedly*) about people speaking in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost, the same thing happened to them, and they see it happening to other people in their church. They see the huge Godly change in people who have received the Holy Ghost, who have genuinely spoken in tongues, and continue in the path of Jesus Christ. They believe speaking in tongues is what naturally takes place when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost. They believe speaking in tongues and receiving the Holy Ghost are tied together. If you tell them “I have not spoken in tongues.” they hear you saying “I have not received the Holy Ghost.” They see speaking in tongues as the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost.

The Bible does not outrightly declare we must speak in tongues in order to go to heaven, but the Bible records speaking in tongues taking place in the events of people receiving the Holy Ghost. The Bible tells us we must have the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit that was in Christ*) dwelling inside us, or we do not belong to Jesus Christ yet. The Bible records recipients of the Holy Ghost speaking in tongues at the moment they received the Holy Ghost.

If someone comes up to me and says he did not speak in tongues, and tells me he has the Holy Ghost dwelling inside of him, I am not going to argue with him, because I do not know what interactions he has had with God. I will encourage him to keep growing deeper into God. If he truly loves God with his uttermost, I believe God will take him to the point where he speaks in tongues, making him hundreds of times closer to God. The pathway to this encounter with God is through giving ourselves absolutely/totally to Jesus Christ: loving him, obeying him, and speaking praises directly to him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart (*Speaking praises out loud may be done in private*).





We become like the people around us: we start talking like them, dressing like them, thinking like them, etc. With God dwelling inside us, we start to become like him: Godly.

Am I resisting speaking in tongues? Or do I pray,

**“Lord, if speaking in tongues  
is in your plans for me,  
give me a double portion.” ?**

The first time I remember speaking in tongues and dancing in the Spirit, it took me immensely deeper into God. I say “the first time I remember” because I may have spoken a few words in tongues earlier, and not knowing what was happening to me, I may have quenched the Spirit of God. I do remember the Spirit of God being all over me.

Before I remember speaking in tongues, I loved God, I read my Bible, I was strong headed for doing what I believed God wanted me to do, I prayed, God was working in my life, etc. Yet with all of this, I still felt as something was missing. I started visiting other churches, searching for more. I visited a Church where genuine praise/worship was being given to God from the bottom of the heart, and I could feel the Spirit of God moving. I was baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”. One night at church, when I was praising God and giving myself totally to Jesus Christ, I started speaking in tongues and dancing in the Spirit. I could feel God enormously all over me. I remember saying to myself, “God is really real”; which seemed strange, because I already knew God was real. It was as if I opened a door, and right there was God himself. I call it my burning bush encounter with God. This encounter with God took me to an enormous depth in God. My speaking in tongues was not so much about the words, it was about my Spiritual encounter with God. God’s overwhelming presence caused me to speak in tongues, and dance in the Spirit, as I was reaching out to him with my all.

When you have this experience, you will know God is real; you will know you have met God. He will be dwelling inside you, changing you into a person who desires and strives to always do God’s will with love.

**“Quench not the Spirit.”** 1 Thessalonians 5:19

God’s ways are often completely contrary to human logic. I believe this is one way God hides Spiritual understanding from the unbelievers, until they believe.

**“the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him”**

1 Corinthians 2:14

“14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.”

When we study speaking in tongues, we must not put our fingers into our ears. The will of God needs to be fulfilled in us, whatever it is, even if it seems strange and foreign. We must not avoid, quench, or add to, the working of the Spirit of God.



The word *tongues* means languages. Speaking in tongues is speaking in languages. The Biblical speaking in tongues is an exclusive operation (*exclusive to the Spirit of God*). The speaking (*the words*) does not originate from the person; God puts the words into the person’s mouth. The utterance originates from God, and God knows all languages. The utterance might be in any language unknown to the person, even in languages of Angels. If the utterance originates from the person, and not from the Spirit of God, it is fake. Yes, we need to mind authenticity.

Speaking in tongues is not learned; it is a supernatural action caused by God. If we look at the day of Pentecost, at Cornelius’s house, and at Ephesus, it is apparent the people who spoke in tongues did not know anything about speaking in tongues. When they received the Holy Ghost, God’s Spirit simply came upon them, causing them to speak in tongues (*different languages*).



I believe there is a diversity of speaking in tongues which takes place upon receiving the Holy Ghost, and sometimes occurs when we are praying and praising God from the bottom of our heart (*speaking praises directly to Jesus Christ*). I believe this diversity of speaking in tongues is between the individual and God. It could be praying or praising Jesus Christ in a different language. Feeling the overwhelming presence of God when we speak in tongues is very enjoyable and edifying. When we feel God upon us to this magnitude, our Spiritual life gets supercharged.

Some people seem to speak in tongues about every time they praise the Lord. Others may only speak a few words in tongues, occasionally.

### **Speaking in tongues is a part of Christianity.**

**“began to speak with other tongues”**

*Acts 2:4*

“And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

**“heard them speak with tongues”**

*Acts 10:46*

“For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,”

**“they spake with tongues”**

*Acts 19:6*

“And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

We need to consider ALL of the Bible verses about speaking in tongues. We do not want to be found considering the book of 1 Corinthians and ignoring the book of Acts.

It is in the book of **Acts** where we find the people speaking in tongues upon receiving the Holy Ghost.

In 1 Corinthians we find instructions/information written to, and intended for, people who have already received the Holy Ghost. These instructions are mostly about speaking in tongues during a church Service. (*1 Corinthians – Chapters 12, 13, and 14*)

When we study the Biblical accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost, the recipients spoke in tongues. The moment could be witnessed by others: at Pentecost (*Acts 2*); at Cornelius's house (*Acts 10*); and at Ephesus (*Acts 19*).

Some people are afraid they will not be able to discern genuine speaking in tongues from what is not genuine. How can we discern what is genuine?

- First, we need to mind what we say. We do not want to be found speaking against (*running down*) the things of God. If we do not know if it is genuine, it is smart to hold our tongue in silence.
- When the Holy Ghost speaks through a person, the person will feel and recognize God.
- How can we discern what is genuine, when we hear others speaking in tongues with interpretation?
  - We need to pray about it, and trust the Holy Ghost to give us proper judgment. Holy Ghost filled Christians can normally sense when something is off-base.
  - When I hear tongues and interpretation, I take into account who the tongues and interpretation came through. Are they people who are genuinely striving to live the Christian life, loving, serving, and obeying God?

When people follow the leading of the Spirit of God, doing God's will, they will Spiritually grow upward. When people do not follow the leading of the Spirit of God, and do things contrary to God, they will Spiritually deteriorate. Sometimes everyone can see the deterioration; other times it takes a Holy Ghost filled Christian to properly recognize it.

Faking tongues and interpretation is a very serious thing. If people start faking tongues and interpretation, in time, we will see them Spiritually deteriorate.

- Genuine tongues and interpretation will not oppose Scripture.
- If someone prophesies something will happen, and it does not happen, the declaration came from the person, not God. However, we need to be very careful, because human analysis can interpret a genuine prophecy incorrectly. Did the prophecy say what we thought it was saying, or did we misinterpret it?
- Holy Ghost filled Christians trust God to give them proper judgment. Without the Spirit of God's help, we are all incapable of making proper judgements in Spiritual matters.

If we have not spoken in tongues, we need to draw extremely close to the Lord Jesus Christ: in love; in obedience; in prayer; in praise; etc. In my experience and observation, speaking in tongues occurs when we get extremely close to God in Spirit.

- Do we truly believe Jesus Christ is the Son of God?
- Do we truly believe Jesus Christ arose from the dead?
- Have we truly decided to exit the ways of the world, to constantly follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness? Have we truly decided to obey Christ's commandments?
- Have we truly decided to have Jesus Christ in first place, ahead of everyone and everything?
- Were we baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ" by immersion, after we repented (*truly decided to exit the ways of the world to constantly follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness*)?
- Do we truly love God with all our heart, mind, soul, and strength?
- Do we tell him "I love you" a number of times each day?
- How much effort do we put forth to learn and do God's will?
- Do we read and study the Bible regularly?
- Do we get down on our knees and praise him with all our heart, speaking directly to him?
- Do we do all the above from the depth of our heart.



When Holy Ghost filled Christians spend some time drawing nigh to God by praising him to his face from the bottom of their heart, they will often speak in tongues. Speaking in tongues is part of the Christian experience.

Remember we need to mind authenticity. For speaking in tongues to be genuine, God must be causing the utterance.

Everyone who genuinely loves and desires God wants to receive the Holy Ghost. This overwhelming one on one encounter with God places us in God, and God inside us.

People who love God and push off speaking in tongues do not know what/who they are pushing off. They have never had this experience with God, thus their human mind cannot comprehend it's importance. Only after a person has genuinely spoken in tongues, danced in the Spirit, etc., can he comprehend the enormous value of these touches from God.

Speaking praises to God out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart is one way to enter into the presence of God: do it for five minutes plus. God only accepts the praises that come from the uttermost depth of our heart.

Sometimes when we are praising God, the words become harder to say; it as if we are praising God in our own language, and other words are trying to come out on top of our words. At this point we need to praise God more intensely, striving to praise him in our own language: genuine speaking in tongues will override our efforts to praise God in our own language. We need to know, when we speak in tongues, we did not aid the speaking in any way.

Just because someone tells us we spoke in tongues does not make it genuine. We may have seen and been taught about speaking in tongues. Without realizing it, we might start acting like the people who are speaking in tongues, believing we are doing the same thing. But if we are causing the utterance, instead of God, we are not genuinely speaking in tongues. You could appear to be speaking in tongues to the people watching you, and they might tell you "You are speaking in tongues". However, you are the one who actually knows if you encountered God, if you had direct contact with God himself.

If we did not have our burning bush encounter with God, we need to keep drawing closer and closer to Jesus Christ, praising him daily, until we have our one on one encounter with God.

The speaking in tongues issue is not so much about the words; it is about receiving the Holy Ghost. People believe speaking in tongues is what naturally happens when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost. Get your Bible and check it out.

If you believe the Spirit of God is dwelling inside you, if you believe you love Jesus Christ with your all, get down on your knees, lift your hands up toward God, and love and praise Jesus Christ out loud with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind, **and see what happens.**

*You may do it in privacy.*

*Be sure to do it for at least five minutes.*

Remember to obey Acts 2:38.

**May God Bless You with Truth**

## aa

### Diversities of speaking in tongues

When people talk about speaking in tongues, many people visualize tongues and interpretation. Tongues and interpretation is only one Biblical diversity of speaking in tongues.

**“diversities of tongues”**

*1 Corinthians 12:28*

“28 And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.”

**“*divers* kinds of tongues”**

*1 Corinthians 12:10*

“10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:”

### Speaking in tongues on the day of Pentecost

Jews from many different countries came back to Jerusalem for the Jewish feast of Pentecost (*Feast of Weeks*). They heard the recipients of the Holy Ghost speaking in tongues. These foreign Jews were astounded, because they heard these Galileans (*people who were considered uneducated*) speaking in their own foreign languages. God was causing the people who received the Holy Ghost to speak in these languages. On the day of Pentecost the people understood what was said without an interpreter.

### There is a diversity of languages in speaking in tongues.

**“how hear we every man in our own tongue,  
wherein we were born?”**

*Acts 2:3–8*

“3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

5 ¶ And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.



6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.  
7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?  
8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?"

### Even languages of angels.

*1 Corinthians 13:1*

"1 ¶ Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal."

### There is a speaking in tongues where one person speaks, one interprets, and the rest listen.

Interpretation of tongues is Biblically listed as a Spiritual gift. With this gift a message can be interpreted by someone who does not know the language, because God gives him the interpretation.

#### "to another the interpretation of tongues"

*1 Corinthians 12:10*

"10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:"

#### "and let one interpret"

*1 Corinthians 14:27*

"27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most by three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret."

### A speaking in tongues that no man understands.

*1 Corinthians 14:2*

"2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries."

*1 Corinthians 14:14*

"14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful."



**We read about speaking in tongues,  
where the whole group spoke in tongues  
at the same time.**

***ALL of them spoke in tongues.***

**“they were all filled with the Holy Ghost,  
and began to speak with other tongues”**

*Acts 2:4*

“4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

**“the Holy Ghost fell on all them”** *(all of them)*

**“For they heard them speak with tongues”**

*Acts 10:44–46*

“44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.

45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.

46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,”

**Praying in tongues, and singing in tongues.**

*1 Corinthians 14:14–15*

“14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful.

15 ¶ What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also.”

**Tongues and magnifying God**

*Acts 10:46*

“46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,”

**Tongues and Prophecy**

*Acts 19:6*

“6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

## bb

### The Spiritual gift of tongues

The Spirit of God gives Spiritual gifts to genuine Spirit filled Christians. These gifts give them unusual capabilities to administer, perform, and accomplish the continuing work of Jesus Christ. Each individual Christian receives different Spiritual gifts, because each Christian has a different set of responsibilities in the work of Christ.

#### We can divide the Spiritual gifts into two categories:

- 1. Gifts of excelling** The Spiritual gift of faith is a good example. All Christians have faith, but the Spirit of God causes some Christians to excel in faith. Their mission for Christ will use this additional faith.
- 2. Special gifts** The Spiritual gift of interpretation of tongues is a good example. Only a small percentage of Christians are given the Spiritual gift to interpret speaking in tongues.

I believe speaking in tongues is for every Christian upon receiving the Holy Ghost, and when we are praying and praising God. I believe this diversity of speaking in tongues is mainly praising and praying to God in a different language. This touch of God greatly edifies the individual.

I also believe God gives some people special Spiritual gifts concerning speaking in tongues and interpretation. Through genuine tongues and interpretation, God might give instructions to the church assembly or individuals. Genuine speaking in tongues and interpretation edifies the whole church.

When we ponder the Spiritual gift of tongues, let us be sure we see all the words like “*divers kinds of*” tongues and “*diversities of*” tongues. When some people read the following verse, they often interpret the Spiritual gift as *speaking in tongues*. If we look closer, we will see it says “*divers kinds of tongues*”.

“*divers kinds of*”

*1 Corinthians 12:10*

“10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers kinds of tongues*; to another the interpretation of tongues:”

**“diversities of tongues”**

**“do all speak with tongues?”**

*1 Corinthians 12:27–31*

“27 ¶ Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular.

28 And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.

29 *Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles?

30 Have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret?

31 But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet shew I unto you a more excellent way.”

Is the Spiritual gift in 1 Corinthians 12  
Speaking in Tongues,  
or  
is it the widening of speaking in tongues  
into **divers kinds of** / **diversities of** tongues?

## CC

### Decently and in order

1 Corinthians 14 gives us guidelines for doing things decently and in order during a church Service. A large portion of this chapter concerns speaking in tongues.

In the church at Corinth, the people were excited about speaking in tongues. In their excitement they were neglecting other parts of the church service which were needed to edify the whole assembly, and to convince unbelievers to join Jesus Christ.

The purpose of coming together for a church service is to edify (*Spiritually uplift*) each other in God, to praise the Lord, and to draw unbelievers to Jesus Christ. When a person draws nigh to God and speaks in tongues, he is Spiritually edified/uplifted by the Lord; but if nobody can interpret the tongues, he is the only one who is edified. We can draw nigh to God and speak in tongues at home to receive our personal edification. Let us save the assembling of ourselves together for the edification of all, praising God, and learning about the Lord.

When genuine speaking in tongues is interpreted, the whole assembly is Spiritually uplifted, and it is a welcomed part of a church service. We also need to see and hear the other diversities of speaking in tongues, because we need to learn about them.

Preaching, when it is genuinely anointed by God, edifies everyone in their own language. This is to be a major part of the church service.

#### Let us study some things Paul wrote in his letter.

**“He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church”**

*1 Corinthians 14:2-4*

“2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries.

3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort.

4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.”

## **“Yet in the church”**

1 Corinthians 14:18–19

“18 I thank my God, I speak with tongues more than ye all:

19 Yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, that *by my voice* I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an *unknown* tongue.”

## **“tongues are for a sign”**

1 Corinthians 14:22

“22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them which believe.”

## **“Let all things be done unto edifying”**

1 Corinthians 14:26

“26 ¶ How is it then, brethren? when ye come together, every one of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine, hath a tongue, hath a revelation, hath an interpretation. Let all things be done unto edifying.”

## **“let it be by two, or at the most by three, and that by course; and let one interpret”**

1 Corinthians 14:27–28

“27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most by three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret.

28 But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church; and let him speak to himself, and to God.”

## **“forbid not to speak with tongues”**

## **“Let all things be done decently and in order”**

1 Corinthians 14:39–40

“39 Wherefore, brethren, covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak with tongues.

40 Let all things be done decently and in order.”



Since the Spirit of God is the one who gives the utterance, can we choose when we speak in tongues?

We learn that when we Spiritually enter deeply into the presence of God, we often end up speaking in tongues. If we want the Spiritual uplifting we receive when we speak in tongues (*when God is Spiritually tangible*), we enter deeply into his presence. When God sees us drawing nigh to him for Spiritual uplifting, he grants us our desire.

## dd

### When will speaking in tongues cease?

The main subject of *1 Corinthians 13* is charity (*love*). In this chapter Paul stresses the importance of charity. He states some segments of Christianity, which we hold high, are only for a period of time, but charity (*love*) continues forever.

Paul names some segments of Christianity which will end. One of them is speaking in tongues. Verse 8 mentions three things that will end: speaking in tongues, prophecies, and knowledge. Verse 9 only mentions two things: knowledge and prophecies. We need to understand genuine *tongues with interpretation* is often a form of prophecy. I believe the Bible is saying speaking in tongues will cease/end, along with prophecies and knowledge. When will this happen? **“when that which is perfect is come”**.

**“shall fail” “shall cease” “shall vanish away”**

All the above phrases mean, **will come to an end.**

**“whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail;”**

**“whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease;”**

**“whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.”**

**“when that which is perfect is come,**

**then that which is in part shall be done away.”**

*1 Corinthians 13:8–10*

“8 ¶ Charity never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.

9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.

10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.”

I believe the phrase **“when that which is perfect is come”** is referring to the day when perfect arrives, when everything will be perfect and complete: Heaven.

I am going to use the word **“Now”** to refer to the time before **“that which is perfect”** arrives, and I am going to use the word **“Then”** to refer to the time after **“that which is perfect”** arrives. Let us compare some present day elements of Christianity to how it will be after **“that which is perfect”** arrives.

### **Knowledge** **“whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away”**

**“vanish away” means cease/end**

**Now** We study the Bible to assemble knowledge about God. We do not know and understand everything. We only see/understand some of the things of God; it is as if we are struggling to see the things of God through a dark window.

**Then** In Heaven we will be in the presence of God, seeing him face to face. God will have given us complete knowledge /understanding. The collecting of knowledge (*learning*) will have vanished away (*ended*).

### **Tongues** **“whether there be tongues, they shall cease”**

**Now** Speaking in tongues is for our edification, and for a sign to the unbelievers. We need the Spiritual edification (*uplifting*) which comes from this direct Spiritual contact with God.

*1 Corinthians 14:4*

“4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.”

*1 Corinthians 14:22*

“22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them which believe.”

**Then** We will always be at the Spiritual highest in Heaven, because we will be in continual direct contact with God: seeing him; walking with him; talking to him face to face, etc. We will not need to speak in tongues for additional edification.

There are no unbelievers in Heaven; signs will not be needed. Speaking in tongues will have ceased.



## Prophecying “whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail”

*Prophecies failing means prophesying will end.  
It does not mean prophecies will fail to be fulfilled.*

**Now** We need prophesying, because we need the edification and knowledge it gives us. A message from God could come through anointed preaching, or through speaking in tongues and interpretation.

*1 Corinthians 14:3–5*

“3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort.

4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.

5 I would that ye all spake with tongues, but rather that ye prophesied: for greater *is* he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying.”

**Then** In Heaven God will give us perfect and complete knowledge/understanding. There will be no need for anointed preaching and the gaining of knowledge, because we will always be in the presence of God. Prophesying will have ceased.

## Charity/Love “Charity never faileth” *Charity/Love never ends*

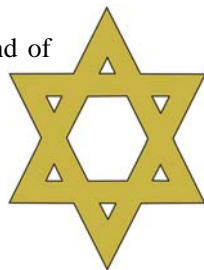
**Always** Love never ends. Love is for the present time, and will exist in Heaven forever.

### 1 Corinthians 13

“1 ¶ Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become as sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.

2 And though I have *the gift of* prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing.

3 And though I bestow all my goods to feed *the poor*, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing.



4 ¶ Charity suffereth long, *and* is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up,

5 Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil;

6 Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth;

7 Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

8 ¶ Charity never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.

9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.

10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.

11 When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.

12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.

13 And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these *is* charity.”

# BB

## Feeling God's presence

We were made to praise God, and God makes praising him extremely exciting for everyone whose spirit makes direct contact with his Spirit.

The first time we are overwhelmed with the power/glory of God, which results with us genuinely speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc., we will be amazed. We never dreamed this kind of contact/interaction with God existed. Being overwhelmed with the Spirit of God immensely accelerates our craving to serve the Lord, supercharging our Spiritual batteries.

We might hear someone say “I attended church for years; I thought I had everything Christianity had to offer. I never dreamed such an exciting, thrilling, overwhelming presence and power of God was available to us. Wow! It is awesome to be overwhelmed by the Spirit of God, actually being able to feel him”. God is Spiritually tangible.

During a church service,  
we might feel God touching our hearts,  
causing tears in our eyes.

This is not a time to withdraw,  
but a time to go further into  
the presence of God, praising him more intensely .

We do not want to stop at the door.

It is a time to lift our hands and praise the Lord:  
loving him; giving him a big Spiritual hug; telling him  
from the bottom of our heart, “Jesus, you are great and  
wonderful,” “I love you”, and “I want you first place in  
my life, above everyone and everything.”

A man born without eyes cannot imagine green. People whose spirit never had direct contact with God's Spirit cannot begin to imagine this experience.

**ILLUSTRATION** There was a man making all kinds of faces, twisting his body, and doing weird body movements. We wanted to know what was wrong with him?" Upon further investigation we found he was singing to music, and acting to the beat. But when we did not hear the music, his actions looked very weird.

**LIKEWISE** Christian activity (*speaking in tongues, dancing in the spirit, singing in tongues, etc.*) can appear very peculiar to people who never had these experiences. It is impossible for people who never had these experiences to imagine the electrifying presence of God, which results with genuine Christians bursting into these things.

# CC

## **Tarrying for the Holy Ghost is drawing nigh to God, and completely giving ourselves to him.**

In some churches, people who have given their heart to Christ, and were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of their sins, but have not spoken in tongues, will go to the church altar and tarry for the Holy Ghost, until they speak in tongues.

Why?

In order to go to Heaven, the Bible states we must have the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit of God*) dwelling in us. When we study the Biblical accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost (*the Spirit who was in Christ*), we find a repeated Biblical pattern: the recipients spoke in tongues. We find no Biblical evidence anyone received the Holy Ghost without speaking in tongues. It is believed speaking in tongues naturally takes place when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost.

The belief concludes, if we did not speak in tongues, we did not receive the Holy Ghost. This belief is based on Biblical records, personal experiences, and eye witnessing: speaking in tongues is what happened in the Bible; speaking in tongues is what happened to them; they see speaking in tongues happening to others; they see the big Godly change in the person’s life after he received the Holy Ghost, genuinely spoke in tongues, and continues to follow the Spirit of God.

Sometimes people who are tarrying for the Holy Ghost, or people who are observing others tarrying, do not understand the actions. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost is drawing nigh to God. It is not begging God. It is not repeating words. It is not learning how to speak utterances. We must not put forth any effort to copy someone speaking in tongues. We need to know we did not help/aid the speaking; we need to know the only thing we did was draw nigh to God. We need to positively know the speaking in tongues was caused by the Spirit of God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost is completely giving ourselves to Jesus Christ (*placing him first*), loving him and praising him from the utmost bottom of our heart.

If we give our lives to Jesus Christ, we need to understand God can only accept first place. A good way to start drawing nigh to God is by doing a personal examination. We should get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, and tell Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart, we want him first in our life: ahead of our parents; ahead of our children; ahead of our home; ahead of our career; ahead of our money; etc.

If we find an area where we have a hard time meaning it from the depth of our heart, we need to pray for God's help. As long as we genuinely desire to have God in first place, above everyone and everything, God will help us accomplish it. Putting Jesus Christ first in our life will result with a large increase in the love and care we give to our family and everyone.

### **The most important commandment**

**“love the Lord thy God with all”**

**“this is the first commandment”**

*Mark 12:30*

“30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment.”

Following Jesus Christ's instructions will be our first priority, when we have Jesus Christ in first place. His instructions are to love God and do what is good and righteous.

Having Jesus Christ in first place, above our family, does not reduce the importance of our family. Exalting him to first place, loving him more than anything or anyone (*even our family*), increases and enhances the love and care we give to our family and others.

God is love. When God is dwelling inside us, love is dwelling inside us, and the love we receive from God will shine through us. The love and care we give to our family and others will grow.

Are we asking Jesus Christ into our life, but only offering him second or third place? If we want Jesus Christ in our lives, we need to put him in his rightful place, honoring him as God.

*Matthew 10:37*

“37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me.”

**Tarrying for the Holy Ghost includes  
praising and worshiping God  
from the bottom of our heart,  
and expressing love and appreciation to him.**

The Bible states God is seeking true worshipers. If we genuinely worship/praise God from the bottom of our heart, God will come to us, because God is seeking for people who worship him in spirit and in truth. Praising Jesus Christ with our whole heart is a very powerful way to get God's attention. When we have God's attention, we can communicate with him at a much higher level. It seems most people do not realize all the power and potential which comes as a result of genuinely loving and praising Jesus Christ.

**“the true worshippers”**

**“for the Father seeketh such to worship him”**

*John 4:23*

“23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.”

The devil cannot tolerate Jesus Christ being praised. If we sincerely praise God and resist the devil, we can create a place within us where God is at hand and the devil has departed.

**“Resist the devil”**

**“Draw nigh to God”**

*James 4:7–8*

“7 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners; and purify *your* hearts, *ye* double minded.”



I have witnessed through observations and personal experiences, we will get God's attention when we love and honor him as God. We need to get down on our knees, raise our hands up toward God, and genuinely praise him out loud from the bottom of our heart (*may be done in private*). This gets God's attention, and God will come to us. If the praise does not come from the bottom of our heart, our efforts will be in vain.

When we are praying and praising God, it is good to visualize Jesus Christ sitting on his throne in Heaven. He is King over everyone and everything.



**“with our hands”**

*Lamentations 3:41*

“41 Let us lift up our heart with *our* hands unto God in the heavens.”

**“the lifting up of my hands”**

*Psalms 141:2*

“2 Let my prayer be set forth before thee *as* incense; *and* the lifting up of my hands *as* the evening sacrifice.”

**“let us kneel”**

*Psalms 95:6*

“6 O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the LORD our maker.”

**“every knee should bow”**

*Philippians 2:10*

“10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth;”

We were created to praise/worship God, and God makes worshipping/praising him extremely pleasurable.

Most people have trouble comprehending how worshipping and praising God can be exciting and pleasurable. It becomes exciting and pleasurable when our spirit and God's Spirit make direct contact. It is exciting and pleasurable when we can feel God all over us (*God is Spiritually tangible*), and we know without a doubt we are positively feeling God. Sometimes God's touch will cause us to speak in tongues. These touches greatly excite our innermost being to serve the Lord. These touches edify the individual (*See 1 Corinthians 14:4*).



**“make a loud noise,  
and rejoice, and sing praise”**

*Psalms 98:4*

“4 ¶ Make a joyful noise unto the LORD, all the earth: make a loud noise, and rejoice, and sing praise.”

**“Praise him” “Praise him”**

*Psalms 150*

“1 ¶ Praise ye the LORD. Praise God in his sanctuary: praise him in the firmament of his power.

2 Praise him for his mighty acts: praise him according to his excellent greatness.

3 Praise him with the sound of the trumpet: praise him with the psaltery and harp.

4 Praise him with the timbrel and dance: praise him with stringed instruments and organs.

5 Praise him upon the loud cymbals: praise him upon the high sounding cymbals.

6 Let every thing that hath breath praise the LORD. Praise ye the LORD.”

Praising Jesus Christ is having a good time celebrating our best friend's triumphs, glory, greatness, etc. Jesus Christ is positively our very best friend (*he loved us so much he died for us*). We can celebrate Jesus by putting our praises for him into joyful songs, and sing about his greatness!

We sing praises about God, but how often do we sing praises directly to him? Instead of always singing “Jesus is wonderful,” let us sing “Jesus, you are wonderful”. Speaking and singing praises directly to him makes it more personal.

When we honor a man, we may shake his hand and pat him on the back. We can also use body language when we praise Jesus Christ. Let us praise God with our voice, and our arms raised. It is important to put forth extra efforts for God.

It seems easier for most people to draw nigh to God when they are around other people who are sincerely worshiping God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost (*drawing nigh to God*) is often done at the church altar. When we draw nigh to God at the altar, it offers an opportunity for the laying on of hands, to ask questions, and to be advised. Nevertheless, drawing nigh to God can be done anywhere and anytime, even alone in our bedroom.

In our private time with God, let us spend some time loving him, giving him gigantic Spiritual hugs. Let us give Jesus Christ the exalted admiration he deserves, telling him he is great and wonderful. We also need to tell others about his greatness.

God discerns the magnitude and intent of the praises we give him. He discerns how much we truly mean it. Unless praise is genuinely coming from our heart, it is worthless noise. Obedience is the first area of drawing nigh to God. When we praise God, do we sometimes get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward him, etc.? God observes if we strive to go the extra mile.

Throughout each day, we need to tell Jesus Christ things like the following: “You are the great, wonderful, and merciful one;” “I love you;” “I want you to be first in my life;” “I want to do your will, and be what you want me to be.”

**God desires to be loved  
by people who choose to love him.**



God opens the eyes (*the understanding*) of people who truly love him, so they can see the way of salvation, and become a part of the *Bride of Christ*. The Bible refers to genuine believers as God’s children, and the *Bride of Christ*. We (*all the genuine Christians together*) are marrying Christ (*God*), and this is large-scale awesome. We need to love Jesus Christ with a genuine bubbling love, for he is our groom and our God. We need to give Jesus Christ the same kind of love as a girl, who is deeply in love, gives to the man she is marrying:

- Giving him Spiritual hugs;
- Telling him often, “I love you.”;
- Smiling and being full of joy in his presence;
- Doing things to please him;
- Dressing the way he likes to see me;
- Conducting myself properly, so I do not cause him shame;
- Spiritually spending time in his lap, with my arms around him, enjoying him;
- Eagerly watching out the window for his return;
- God knows if he is our first love (*most important love*), above everyone and everything.

## Some people ask, Is tarrying for the Holy Ghost Biblical?

Let us look at things one by one.

- Having God in first place, above everyone and everything, is Biblical.
- Prayer is Biblical.
- Praising God is Biblical.
- Drawing nigh to God is Biblical.
- Kneeling is Biblical
- Lifting up our hands toward God is Biblical
- Loving God with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength, is Biblical.



The things we talked about in tarrying for the Holy Ghost are Biblical components of loving and serving God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost is drawing nigh to God, completely giving ourselves to him. People who receive the Holy Ghost while doing the above will instruct others to do the same things.

The term *Tarrying for the Holy Ghost* is not in the Bible. People saw individuals were receiving the Holy Ghost when they were doing what they should have been doing in the first place: getting down on their knees with uplifted hands, praising and loving God from the depth of their heart; giving themselves completely to Jesus Christ; etc. Someone started calling these acts *Tarrying for the Holy Ghost*. The phrase *Tarrying for the Holy Ghost* caught on, and other people started using this phrase.

Some of us give ourselves totally to Jesus Christ in one plunge. Others of us who are more questioning take a number of steps before we give ourselves completely to him. We need to increase our love for God, and draw nigh to him with diligence. We need to keep tarrying (*drawing nigh to God*) until Christ is truly first place in our heart, until we receive the Holy Ghost.

**I believe if we have not spoken in tongues,  
it is because of one or more of the following:**

- We do not love and worship God with our all: all our heart; all our soul, all our mind, all our strength. We do not get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, praising Jesus Christ out loud from the depth of our heart.
- Jesus Christ is not our number one love and priority
- Acts 2:38 has not been fully obeyed
- We are quenching the Spirit of God?

**Better communications with God**

I found my communications with God climbed to a much higher level when I praised him out loud from the bottom of my heart. God is seeking praise. Let us praise God from the depth of our heart, and God will come to us. Then we can communicate with him at a much higher level.

My advice for anyone who desires better communications with God is the following:

- Join Jesus Christ for the remission of your sins by obeying Acts 2:38.
- Earnestly pray every day for a closer relationship with God.
- Give yourself totally to Jesus Christ, putting him first, above family, job, and everything.
- Sincerely and prayerfully read from the New Testament every day, searching for ways to serve God better.
- Get down on your knees with your hands lifted up toward God, and genuinely praise him from the bottom of your heart, speaking directly to him out loud (*may be done in private*).
- Wholeheartedly strive to obey God in all things, doing your best to live morally, righteously, lovingly, etc.

For proper communications with God, we need the Holy Ghost continually living/dwelling inside us.

## Speaking in Tongues

When we say *speaking in tongues*, many people automatically think about tongues and interpretation. Tongues and interpretation is only one diversity of speaking in tongues. This diversity is only given to some Christians as a Spiritual gift.

Speaking in tongues is not always interpreted. I see the type of speaking in tongues talked about in 1 Corinthians 14:4 as the Spirit of God overwhelming us as we are genuine praying and praising God; this may result with us praying and praising him in another language (*No interpretation*). Feeling God upon us when this happens greatly edifies us, supercharging our Spiritual batteries.

Why do I believe you should speak in tongues?

In the Bible, the people spoke in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost. It is a touch from God. This touch took me from being stirred by God to being with God; I could actually feel him all over me. This touch changed the rest of my life, resulting with me having an extremely closer walk with God.

I want you to have this overwhelming touch from God, so you will be extremely closer to him. People who never had this touch do not know what I am talking about. This touch from God will change the rest of your life.

We need to give Jesus Christ a big Spiritual hug every day, loving him from the bottom of our heart. Every time we acknowledge Jesus Christ's immense greatness, and put him first, it touches God's heart, resulting with us having better communications with God.

Remember,  
God is seeking the true worshipers,  
so let us be one of them.

## 6

### Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, accepting him as our Lord and Saviour

It is true; all we need to do is believe on the Lord Jesus Christ to go to Heaven, but we do not get to choose which definition of the word *believe* is correct. We need to understand the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes accepting him as our Lord and Saviour.

A lord is someone who has authority over others. He tells the people in his kingdom what to do, and he has the responsibility to care for them. If we accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord, we are voluntarily accepting him as the one we will obey, and as the one who will care for us. Our obedience reveals if we have truly accepted him as our Lord (*as the one we obey*).

Some people think they will go to Heaven if they live a decent life, and do lots of good things; but this is not how it works. We cannot earn our admission into Heaven by doing good works; we cannot make ourselves good or holy enough to deserve Heaven. However, God loves us, and he made a way for us to go to Heaven through Jesus Christ.

Striving to do good from the bottom of our heart, living a clean decent life, etc., can get God's attention, and he might show us the way to Heaven, like he did for Cornelius. God heard Cornelius's prayers, took notice of his good works, and sent St. Peter to show him the way of salvation through Jesus Christ. Doing good is never in vain.

**“he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do”**

*Acts 10:1–6*

“1 ¶ There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian *band*,

2 A devout *man*, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway.

3 He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius.

4 And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God.

5 And now send men to Joppa, and call for *one* Simon, whose surname is Peter:

6 He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do.”



*( Read Acts chapter 10  
for the full account.)*

Under the dispensation of the Law, the people were to obey God's Law to the letter of the Law. In the dispensation of Grace, we are to obey Christ's commandments from the depth of our heart. Our obedience or disobedience reveals if our heart is in God. If our heart is where it should be, we will obey Jesus Christ; we will have an intense desire in our heart to obey his commandments; and we will follow the leading of the Holy Ghost. If we do not want to obey Christ's commandments, we are not connected to Jesus Christ yet. How intensely we strive to obey God reveals how much we love him.

Cooperating with God is not work or bondage; it is not a weight around our neck. Jesus Christ's commandments are for our well-being: making our life better, cleaner, happier, and more fulfilling. We cooperate with Christ, because we want to do what he tells us to do. He is the groom, and we are his bride. The bride and groom love each other, and want to please each other.

Christ's commandments are comparable to parents telling their children to stay away from things that will harm and impair them, and telling them to always do the right things: things that will keep them loving, healthy, and moral. Christ's commandments are about love, and leading us to Heaven.

The majority of Christ's instructions are about loving God, and loving and caring for each other. Genuine Christians soon discover obeying Christ's commandments is for their own good/gain. They learn they win, when they obey God.

Under the dispensation of the Law, the people were required to obey written laws to the crossing of the t, and to the dotting of the i. Under the dispensation of Grace, we are to cooperate with Jesus Christ. He tells us to repent and be baptized, so we cooperate. Yes, cooperating with God involves doing and obeying, but compared to the Law, cooperating is very user-friendly. Not cooperating with God is rebelling against him.

Obedience is not bondage to laws; it is cooperating with God.

Due to our sins, we were all doomed to the eternal lake of fire. God saw our circumstance; he loved us and gave us grace. He provided us a way to escape the eternal lake of fire through Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ's death on the cross paid the full price for our salvation. We don't have to do anything to earn or help earn our salvation (*our admission into Heaven*). All we need to do is accept Jesus Christ as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour, yielding ourselves completely to him as he leads/molds us up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. God's grace molds us into good and righteous people as we cooperate with him. If we think we are in God, but not maturing into being good and righteous, something is wrong.

If we genuinely accept Jesus Christ as our Lord (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour, God will forgive us of our sins, and free us from sin's handcuffs (*liberate us from sin controlling us*).

A genuine Christian's good works, obedience to God, living righteously, etc., are a result of being a genuine Christian, a result of having God dwelling inside us. They are not actions of earning our way to Heaven. Thank God for grace.

**We are saved by God's grace, not by our works.**

***"it is the gift of God"***

*Ephesians 2:8-9*

"8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is the gift of God:*

9 Not of works, lest any man should boast."

*Romans 3:24*

"24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:"



*Romans 11:6*

“6 And if by grace, then *is it* no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if *it be* of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.”

*Titus 3:5–8*

“5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

8 *This is* a faithful saying, and these things I will that thou affirm constantly, that they which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable unto men.”

We are not saved by going through the motions, and saying the right words. If our heart is not deeply involved in our actions towards God, our actions are in vain.

*Matthew 15:8–9*

“8 This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with *their* lips; but their heart is far from me.

9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching *for* doctrines the commandments of men.”

We join Jesus Christ without being good and righteous, without doing good works, etc. We do not work at being good and righteous so God will accept us; it does not work that way. Rather, we give ourselves completely to Jesus Christ, and he causes us to grow into being good and righteous as we cooperate with him. Things change when we genuinely join Jesus Christ the Bible way, because God enters us: this is called being born again, being born of the Spirit of God, receiving the Holy Ghost, etc. God does not just sit inside us; he molds us into the things of God. This is why we start maturing into being good and righteous. It is impossible to become good and righteous without God.

We cannot obtain partial grace. We cannot accept God's grace to forgive our sins, and reject the grace of God that transforms us into Godly people. We cannot say “NO” to God as his grace is pulling us out of sinful activity. Saying “NO” is rejecting Jesus Christ as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*).



OR



We do not have what it takes to be truly good and righteous, because we are human beings. We cannot make it to Heaven without God inside us.

When God is dwelling inside us, he will keep molding us into being good and righteous. He will lead us to Heaven, as we cooperate with him.

When God is dwelling inside us, leading us, we are a born again Christian who is obeying Christ's commandments.

We believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and accept him as our **Lord** and Saviour with our heart and mind. Yet the Bible gives us instructions on how to join Jesus Christ (*things we are to do*). Everyone who genuinely accepts Christ with their heart and mind will follow these instructions, because our **Lord** (*the one we obey*) Jesus Christ instructs us to do them: repent; be baptized. St. Peter puts forth these instructions as the joining instructions in Acts 2:38. When things are genuine, and done from the heart, God fills us with the Holy Ghost (*God fills us with himself*).

**“But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God”**

*John 1:12*

“12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:”

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our **Lord** and Saviour, is the starting point, not the “all done” point, of walking with Jesus Christ to Heaven. Yes, there are many more things to do and obey as we walk with Christ.

God as the Holy Ghost will continue to mold us as we follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. If we are cooperating with God as he molds us into being good and righteous, we are considered good, even though we will not reach perfection in this lifetime. Being good is the result of having God dwelling inside us, molding us. Being evil is the result of not being molded by God. It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and continue to live our sinful life as we did before we believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.

**Genuine belief on the Lord Jesus Christ  
always starts the dominoes falling forward.**



Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes accepting him as our Lord and Saviour > this results with us obeying him > this results with us repenting, being baptized, and receiving the Holy Ghost > this results with us following the leading of God's Spirit up the strait and narrow way of righteousness > this results with us doing good works > and on and on. It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and stop there. Not proceeding forward in God reveals we have not properly believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.

The Bible is a book of truths (*plural*). We can get out of Biblical context by separating one Biblical truth from the other truths of the Bible. Just as we can read words out of context and comprehend things incorrectly, we can separate one truth from the other truths of the Bible, and end up with an incorrect conclusion.

We could take verses that explain we cannot earn or help earn our admission into Heaven, and verses that explain salvation is by faith, not by our "works"; and conclude we do not need to do anything but believe. But this is a human conclusion, which is contrary to the Bible. This conclusion is formed by specially selecting verses to

point out one truth, and ignoring other Bible truths that are in conflict to this conclusion. I believe we would have to remove most of the New Testament from the Bible to believe we can be a genuine Christian who does not obey Christ: who does not do good works; who does not live righteously and morally; etc. Being genuinely born again always produces obedience to Christ: good works, righteous living, etc. Saying we can go to Heaven without genuinely and honestly striving to obey Jesus Christ's commandments is saying we can go to Heaven without being born again, because these things are always the result of being genuinely born again. If we do nothing but believe, our belief is incorrect, and we are not connected to Jesus Christ yet.

**EXAMPLE** A young woman gave birth to a baby boy. She asked her doctor how she could be a loving mother. The doctor gave her a list of things loving mothers do for their new born babies: change their diapers; feed them every two hours; keep them warm and clean; etc.

A friend told her "Doing all these things does not make you a loving mother. A cold-hearted babysitter could do all these things and not love the child at all. Love is a feeling a mother has for her child, not physical movements."

So the mother did not feed her baby. She left him shivering all day long in a filthy overflowing diaper. She told herself she was a loving mother, because she had feelings for the child. She figured doing the things the doctor said fell under the label "works"; and "works" (*physical movements*) is not love; love is having feelings for the child.

A mother can provide excellent care for her child without loving him/her. But it is impossible for her to be a loving mother, while she is willfully providing unacceptable/inadequate care for her child. Genuine love will compel her to do the "works" of caring for him.

**LIKEWISE** We can do many good "works". We can go through all the motions of being a Christian, and not be a genuine Christian. If we are a real genuine Christian, our love and desire for God will compel us to do the verbal and physical works/actions of being a Christian. If we are not striving to do all the works associated with believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, our heart is not properly given to God.

Just as our love for a child will compel us to properly care for him, our genuine love and faith for God will compel us to do all the works of genuine Christianity. If our heart is not compelling us to do all the works of genuine Christianity, we have the wrong kind of faith.

*James 2:17-18*

“17 Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.

18 Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works.”

It is incorrect to say we do not have to do the **Lord's** will, if the Lord's will is “works”.

If we do not want to carry our cross, we could reason and convince ourselves we do not have to carry it. We could call carrying our cross “works” (*physical movements*), and point out Bible verses that declare we are not saved by our “works”. This is incorrect thinking/reasoning. This is an effort to feel at ease while we are declining to do the Lord's will. Throughout this book, I point out Bible verses that declare, if we are not doing the “works” of Jesus Christ, we are not connected to Jesus Christ yet.

### **Following is Obeying/Doing/Cooperating**

*Matthew 10:38*

“38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me.”

*Luke 14:27*

“27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.”

Jesus Christ wants us to carry our cross: doing our duties as Christians; suffering whatever trials, tribulations, and persecutions that come our way, associated with following and preaching Jesus Christ. We can cooperate with Christ, and carry our cross. Or we can refuse to cooperate, and live a life separated from Jesus Christ. *(NOTE: It is impossible to travel the path of Jesus Christ, carrying our cross, until the Spirit of God is living inside us.)*



Truth one, without truth two, can lead to off-base conclusions.

### **TRUTH ONE – We are not saved by our “works”**

Our “works” do not earn or help earn our way into Heaven. Our “works” do not make us worthy enough for Heaven.

### **TRUTH TWO – All genuine Christians obey Jesus Christ’s commandments, and do the “works”.**

All genuine Christians have accepted Jesus Christ as their **LORD**, as the one they obey. Their love for God compels them to obey Jesus Christ in all things, “works” included. They desire and strive to obey Christ commandments, following the Spirit of God.

We cannot earn our salvation with our personal works/efforts. On the other hand, if we decline to do the works, our heart is not properly connected to God yet. Yes, we need to do the works; they simply do not have anything to do with earning our way to Heaven. Doing the works has everything to do with our **LOVE** for Christ.

**“hereby we do know that we know him,  
if we keep his commandments”**

**“He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments,  
is a liar, and the truth is not in him”**

*1 John 2:3–5*

“3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.

4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.

5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him.”

We find the Bible referring to the genuine Christians as **“them that obey him”**. Jesus Christ is the author of eternal salvation to all the people who have genuinely accepted him as their **Lord** (*as the one they obey*).

**“them that obey him”**

*Hebrews 5:9*

“9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;”

**“them that obey him”**

*Acts 5:32*

“32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.”

Obeying Christ's commandments is a never-ending striving (a *growing*) to find and do his will.

**Every sheep (every person) who belongs to Christ follows/obeys him.**

*John 10:27*

“27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:”

**What we do, or do not do, reveals if we belong to God**

**“whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God”**

*1 John 3:10*

“10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.”

( *Their evil “works”, and their lack of Godly “works”, declare they do not know God.*  )

**“They profess that they know God; but in works they deny him”**

*Titus 1:16*

“16 They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.”

**“He that doeth good is of God:**

**but he that doeth evil hath not seen God”**

*3 John 1:11*

“11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God.”

**“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

**Everyone who has genuinely accepted Jesus Christ as their Lord does his will, even if it is called “works”.**

**“Not every one that saith”**

**“but he that doeth”**

*Matthew 7:21*

“21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”

**“he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever”**

*1 John 2:17*

“17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.”

Why do some people say they have accepted Jesus Christ as their **Lord** (as the one they obey), even calling him “**Lord**”, while they reject him as their **Lord** by choosing to be noncompliant?

**Falsely calling Jesus “Lord”**

*Luke 6:46*

“46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?”

**“He that hath my commandments,  
and keepeth them,  
he it is that loveth me”**

*John 14:21*

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

**Read Revelation 22:14**

**“If ye keep my commandments,  
ye shall abide in my love”**

*John 15:10*

“10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father’s commandments, and abide in his love.”

**“and doeth them not”**

*Matthew 7:26*

“26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand:”

**“whosoever doth not bear his cross,  
and come after me,  
cannot be my disciple”**

*Luke 14:27*

“27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple.”

**God molds genuine Christians into righteousness.**

*(We cannot be righteous without God dwelling inside us.)*

**“except your righteousness shall exceed”**

*Matthew 5:20*

“20 For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.”



**“if the righteous scarcely be saved”**

*1 Peter 4:18*

“18 And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear?”

**Who is our Lord (the one we obey)? Jesus Christ or Sin?**

**“his servants ye are to whom ye obey;  
whether of sin unto death,  
or of obedience unto righteousness”**

*Romans 6:16*

“16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?”

**“Ye cannot serve God and mammon.”**

*Matthew 6:24*

“24 No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.”

Jesus Christ commands that believers are to be baptized (*in water*) in the Great Commission. It is wrong to say to Christ, “Lord, it is not necessary for me to obey your commandment to be baptized, because I believe baptism falls under the category of ‘works’, and we are not saved by our ‘works’.”

People whose hearts are properly connected to Jesus Christ, who are filled with the Holy Ghost, have a God given drive/zeal /passion to obey all the commandments of Christ. Someone calling Christ’s commandments “works” does not change a thing.

*Matthew 15:8–9*

“8 This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with *their* lips; but their heart is far from me.

9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching *for* doctrines the commandments of men.”

Have I genuinely accepted Jesus Christ  
as my Lord (as the one I obey)?

Our actions of obedience, and our life, will reveal if we  
have genuinely accepted him as our Lord.

It is incorrect to say “I do not have to do the Lord’s will,  
if the Lord’s will is “works”.

# 7

## Sin

Not Cooperating with God

Not doing God's will

Doing things contrary to God's will

We learned in chapter 6, obeying Christ's commandments is not mechanically obeying a set of written laws to the crossing of the **t**, and the dotting of the **i**. Obedience is genuinely striving to do the things God tells us to do with a right and honest heart; it is simply cooperating with God. We cooperate, thus we obey Christ's commandments.

Christ's commandments are for our own well-being, making our life better, cleaner, happier, and more fulfilling. They are about loving God and mankind. They are about staying away from things that will harm and impair us. They are about doing good things that will keep us loving, healthy, and moral. They are about following Jesus Christ to Heaven. Genuine Christians soon discover that obeying Christ's commandments is for their own good/gain. We learn we win, when we obey God.

To know what is sin, we need to understand the formula for determining which things are good, and which things are evil (*sin*).

## GOoD

God is good. Good means like God (*Godly*). Good is determined when our actions parallel the actions of God. If an action is like God's actions, it is good. *Example*: God loves and cares for people, so loving and caring for people is good.

## dEVIL

The devil is evil. Evil means like the devil. Evil is determined when our actions parallel the actions of the devil. If an action is like the actions of the devil, it is evil. *Example*: The devil does everything that is contrary to God (*contrary to good*), so everything that is contrary to God is evil (*unGodly*). Saying untruthful things is evil, because it is the way of the devil; it is contrary to the ways of God. Saying untruthful things is acting like the devil.

Everyone follows their own heart, which results with us choosing to follow God or sin. We are either growing upwards in God, or falling downwards with the devil. If our heart longs for God/good, we will want to eliminate all the evil things out of our life. If Our heart longs to follow sin, we are opposing God, which is opposing good.

If we genuinely love God, God will reveal himself to us. If we love evil, we will not be able to see (*perceive*) or comprehend God.

### **Sin ALWAYS Destroys/Deteriorates**

The word *sin* means anti-good (*anti-God*). Sin always destroys /deteriorates the person, country, etc. Everything that is anti-God (*anti-good*) destroys and deteriorates.

God made everything good. But when sin came on the scene in the garden of Eden, things started falling downhill and deteriorating. Sin brought new things into our world: death; health problems; hate; rape; fornication; murder; adultery; lying; prostitution; getting even; vulgarity; homosexuality; child molesting; immorality; iniquity; evil music; lust; non-spouse sex; stealing; abortion; wrath; pornography; bitterness; witchcraft; belittling; pride; selfishness; gossip; seductive dressing; drunkenness; rioting; covetousness; disobedience; idolatry; lasciviousness; reviling; etc.

Why do people want to swim in the cesspools of evil, when they may swim in clean/clear/pure waters of love, free of charge? Why do people want to abuse/injure themselves, so they can be like (*fit in with, follow*) worldly people who are headed for the eternal lake of fire? Why do people decline to follow Jesus Christ to Heaven, and allow sin to destroy them?

Satan paints a facade, falsely painting sin to appear attractive, alluring, charming, mouth-watering, etc., attempting to get people to lust and run after sin. When people start to follow sin, they may think they are having a joyride. But in time sin destroys them, causing them mental pain, emptiness, etc. In the end, sin takes them to the eternal lake of fire. However, through Jesus Christ they may exit the whole mess, and their life can be changed to good, holy, pure, and complete.

**ILLUSTRATION** An antique dealer convinced Ellen to trade her antique dishes for a brand-new set. He bought Ellen's dishes at a super bargain price. He knew her dishes would sell immediately for a few thousand dollars. He took advantage of Ellen, using her lack of knowledge for his own gain. He had absolutely no concern for Ellen; he just used her for his own purpose.

**LIKEWISE** Satan is not concerned about anyone; he just uses people to serve his own purpose. Satan takes advantage of people's lack of understanding. He gains control of people by deceiving and alluring them into thinking sinning is a better life. He uses them for his own purpose in his war against God. Satan is not concerned he is pulling people from a life of love and truth, taking them to a place of hate and deception. If they choose to stay there, they will end up in the eternal lake of fire.

**Sin is a facade** It might appear appealing from the front, but once you have entered it, sin will destroy you.

Sin will take you where you do not want to go.

### **Sin is always addictive.**

Sin is always addictive (*I explain this addiction as being handcuffed to sin*). Everyone is, or was, handcuffed to sin. Sin, being bigger than the person, drags the person into sinful activity.

All sin is addictive. I hear homosexuals saying they were born a homosexual, saying they cannot change. The truth is they are handcuffed to the sin of homosexuality, and the sin of homosexuality drags them where they do not want to go (*at least some of them say they do not want to go there*). People can get released from all sin's handcuffs, including the sin of homosexuality, through Jesus Christ. People get released from sin's handcuffs when they receive the Holy Ghost, when Almighty God himself is continually dwelling inside of them.

When we try to exit sin on our own (*without God*), it is like a new year's resolution to lose weight; we work at it for a while, but in time we revert back to sinning again. Some people who were trying to get released from sin say they went to churches and did as they were

instructed, but it did not work. If it did not work, the instructions were probably incorrect, or not genuinely followed. Just because an organization calls itself a church, does not mean God is with them. Just because people tell us what to do, does not mean they understand the facts/truth. Being released from sin is accomplished with God truly living/dwelling inside us. Exiting sin is not accomplished by mankind through programs, education, or by convincing sinners they need to stop sinning. We cannot exit our sinning and grow into righteousness without God living inside us.

The only way we can get sin's handcuffs removed  
is through Jesus Christ,  
and the Spirit of God dwelling inside us.

**Wisdom (pure, from God) is the subject (me) of the following:**

**“Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not.”**

**“he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul”**

*Proverbs 8:32–36*

“32 ¶ Now therefore hearken unto me, O ye children: for blessed *are they that* keep my ways.

33 Hear instruction, and be wise, and refuse it not.

34 Blessed *is* the man that heareth me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.

35 For whoso findeth me findeth life, and shall obtain favour of the LORD.

36 But he that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul: all they that hate me love death.”



### **The extreme uttermost depth of our heart**

When we do things concerning God, we need to do them from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We can repent, but with God we need to repent from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We need to love and praise God from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. The same is true for all things concerning God.

## How can I get released from sin's handcuffs?

We need to believe Jesus Christ is the Son of God, and accept him as our personal **Lord** (*as the one we obey*) and Saviour. We must constantly love God with ALL our heart, soul, mind, and strength.

We need to obey the instructions given by St. Peter on the first day of the Church (*Acts 2:38*), including receiving the Holy Ghost.

### The instructions (*The "Promise" is the Holy Ghost*)

*Acts 2:38–39*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

If we do not have the Holy Ghost dwelling inside us after we repented and were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, the most likely problem is we have not completely given ourselves to Jesus Christ from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We need to draw closer to God. We need to get down on our knees and pray out loud (*this may be done in private*), and convince God we want to give ourselves completely to him, and we want to always do his will. While we are on our knees, we need to love and praise him from the depth of our heart. We need to do this daily.

When we genuinely give ourselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, Almighty God enters us. When God enters us, the addiction to sin is broken (*the handcuffs are broken*), because God is bigger and stronger than sin. Being freed from sin's handcuffs, we are free to choose the ways of God, or to return to the handcuffs of the devil.

With the handcuffs removed, we have the freedom to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, as he leads, teaches, and molds us into perfection in God. As we cooperate with God, he will be continually teaching us what is good and what is sin. He will tell us how sin will utterly destroy us, if we choose to follow it.

Even though we are freed from sin's handcuffs, sin will speak to us. Sin woos the freed individual to return to the handcuffs, and the destruction. Sin works very hard to make destructive things appear attractive, alluring, charming, mouth-watering, etc., crying “Return, return, return to your sinning”. Sin works very hard at making good and righteous things appear undesirable. However,

being freed from sin's handcuffs, we are free to ignore sin's wooing, and we are free to follow Jesus Christ up the path of righteousness. Whoever we choose to obey is our **lord** and our eternal destination. We can follow/obey God, and go to Heaven; or we can follow/obey sin, and go to the eternal lake of fire.

God always knows the full intent of our heart.

If we have a hard time giving ourselves completely to God, we need to ask him for help; he will help us if our heart is sincere. We do not want to forget to praise Jesus Christ from the bottom of our heart daily. God is seeking people who genuinely worship him in spirit and in truth, so let us be one of them. Genuine praise gets God's attention.

**“for the Father seeketh such to worship him”**

*John 4:23*

“23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.”

It is totally impossible to love God, while we are choosing to continue our sinning. It is totally impossible to follow both God and sin. If we continue choosing to obey sin, we are still wearing sin's handcuffs, and we are not following the Spirit of God. People, who are handcuffed to sin do what sin dictates: they obey sin; they are sin's servants.

**“Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.”**

*John 8:34*

“34 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.”

**“his servants ye are to whom ye obey;  
whether of sin unto death,  
or of obedience unto righteousness”**

*Romans 6:16*

“16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?”

**“Ye cannot serve God and mammon.”** (wealth – idolizing it) *Matthew 6:24*

“24 No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.”

We have liberty in Jesus Christ, because we are no longer handcuffed to sin. Christ fulfilled the law, ending the law of Moses. This liberty does not allow us to do anything contrary to the will of God, but it is a freedom which allows us to follow/obey Jesus Christ, without carrying excessive burdensome weights.

Genuine Christians do what God wants them to do. They are the children of God; they follow the leading of God’s Spirit; they obey God.

**“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God,  
they are the sons of God.”**

*Romans 8:14*

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

**“I will put my spirit within you,  
and cause you to”**

*Ezekiel 36:26–27*

“26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.

27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do *them*.”

**“I will put my laws into their mind,  
and write them in their hearts:”**

*Hebrews 8:10*

“10 For this *is* the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:”

**“thy law *is* within my heart”**

*Psalms 40:8*

“8 I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law *is* within my heart.”



**“Thy word have I hid in mine heart,  
that I might not sin against thee.”**

*Psalms 119:10–12*

10 ¶ With my whole heart have I sought thee: O let me not wander from thy commandments.

11 ¶ Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.

12 ¶ Blessed *art* thou, O LORD: teach me thy statutes.”

When we are filled with God (*the Holy Ghost*), we are immediately changed. We will no longer do the sinful things we were doing. However, we do not become instantly perfect. An enormous change takes place in our life when we are filled with the Spirit of God. Then God will continue to grind and polish us, refining us deeper and deeper into righteousness, as we cooperate with him. This refining will continue the rest of our current life.

### **Genuine Christians walk in God (*the light*)**

**“if we walk in the light”** (*walk in God*)

*1 John 1:7–10*

7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.

9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.”

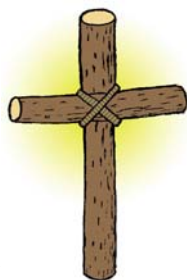
Some people think they did too much sinning; they think they are too filthy to give themselves to God. They cannot imagine God forgiving them, because they did so many evil things. But in reality, if they sincerely love and want God, the door of salvation is open to them. People who are forgiven much (*big-time*) often love God much (*big-time*). Sometimes the vilest sinners who are genuinely converted become the best Christians.

**“whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little”**

*Luke 7:47*

47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little.”

Some people think they are allowed to do a little bit of sinning, because nobody is perfect. This is totally incorrect; nobody is allowed to choose to sin. We must not tempt/test God. If we continue choosing to sin, we are not properly connected to God; our heart is not in God.



**ILLUSTRATION** Once a week a man had sex with a woman who was not his wife. He knew it was a sin, so as soon as he got home he would immediately get down on his knees and ask God to forgive him. The problem was he intended to do it again next week.

If we are planning to sin again, we did not repent. A genuine repented person has wholeheartedly decided not to sin again, and he will wholeheartedly strive to fulfill his decision. It is impossible to be a repented person who willfully chooses to continue sinning. If we continue choosing to disobey Jesus Christ, we are rejecting him as our **Lord** (*as the one we obey*). If we tell God we are sorry, when we are not sorry, we would be lying to God.

Genuine believers do not make room for sinning; they follow the leading of the Spirit of God. God's Spirit always leads people away from sinning. If a genuine Christian sins, the Holy Ghost who is living inside him will cause him to feel extremely condemned; he needs to repent from the extreme uttermost depth of his heart.

**A genuine Christian feels horrid about sin,  
and how it will destroy him. He will run from sin.**

**“Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not:”**

*1 John 3:5–10*

“5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.

7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous.

“8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.”



**“whosoever is born of God sinneth not;”**

*1 John 5:18*

“18 ¶ We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.”

**ILLUSTRATION (putting myself first)** There was a man who thought being rich and powerful would make him happy, content, respected, and well satisfied.

He had dreams of becoming the CEO of a large corporation, somebody who people would greatly admire and respect. He spent all his time working and studying toward his dream job. He took advantage of people, using them to obtain his wealth and power. Climbing the corporate ladder consumed all his time; as a result, he had very little time to spend with his family.

When he finally became a wealthy CEO, he realized he was alone and empty. Due to the fact he did not have time to spend with his wife and family, his wife left him, and his children do not have a child/parent bonding to him. His so-called friends are people who want connections to his wealth and power. If he loses his wealth and power, they will be gone too.

His dream of being a rich and powerful person, the pride of his family, someone who people would love and admire, did not come true. In the end, being rich and powerful did not have much value to him, because he was alone and empty: void of people who truly love and care about him.

**ILLUSTRATION (obedience)** A man told his oldest son to mow the lawn. He mowed about half of it, and he said to himself, “Somebody else can finish mowing the lawn. I am going to play ball”. And he put the mower away.

On another day, the man told his youngest son to mow the lawn. While he was mowing it, some of his friends came by and asked him “We are going to play ball. Do you want to play?” He replied “I cannot play today; I have to finish mowing the lawn.” When his dad came home, he thanked him for mowing the lawn and gave him twenty dollars.

When the oldest son heard his dad gave his brother twenty dollars for mowing the lawn, he was very upset. He went to his dad irritated and said “I should get money for mowing the lawn too. I mowed half of it; I should get ten dollars.”

His dad explained “You were told to mow the whole lawn, and you only mowed part of it. You did not get any money because you did not finish the job.”

The oldest son said “My brother did not mow all the grass either. Look here under the bush; he missed eight blades of grass. Look over there; he missed some by the post too.”

His dad replied “I told you to mow the whole lawn. You chose not to obey my instructions by not mowing the back part of the lawn. Your brother followed my instructions. Just because he missed a few blades of grass does not make him disobedient.”

**LIKEWISE** In obeying God, there is an enormous difference between choosing not to obey, and not being 100% perfect.

Obeying Christ's commandments is striving to do what he tells us to do with a right and honest heart. We never, never, never, want to choose to sin.



## **God Warns people about sin and its consequences.**

**“the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God”**

**“Be not deceived:”**

*1 Corinthians 6:9–11*

“9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,

10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.

11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.”

Verse 11 (*above*) tells us pre-Christians did these sins before they genuinely gave themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, before they were washed, sanctified, justified, and forgiven.

Why do unrighteous people do unrighteous things? They are handcuffed to sin, and sin is pulling them into unrighteousness. They bow down to sin, because they do not have Almighty God dwelling inside them. They need to genuinely join Jesus Christ the Bible way, and receive the Holy Ghost.

**“they which do such things  
shall not inherit the kingdom of God”**

*Galatians 5:19–21*

“19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,

20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,

21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.”

**“the wrath of God is revealed from Heaven against”**

*Romans 1:18*

“18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;”

*Ephesians 5:5*

“5 For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.”

**“I never knew you: depart from me,  
ye that work iniquity”**

*Matthew 7:23*

“23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.”

**“all things that offend,  
and them which do iniquity”**

**“shall cast them into a furnace of fire:  
there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth”**

*Matthew 13:41–42*

“41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;  
42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.”

God knows if we are striving to do his will, or if we are trying to slide around it. We need to study the things of God faithfully and earnestly. We do not want to be found guilty of ignoring the things of God, because they are not first in our heart.

In order to know God, we need God's Spirit living inside us. So let us obey God, and ask him for the Holy Ghost.

**“the Holy Ghost,  
whom God hath given to them that obey him”**

*Acts 5:32*

“32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him.”

**“Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,  
he is none of his”**

*Romans 8:8–9*

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.  
9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

• The Spirit of God,  
• the Holy Ghost,  
• and the Spirit of Christ,  
are one and the same.

**“to them that ask him”**

*Luke 11:13*

“13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?”

**“sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee”**

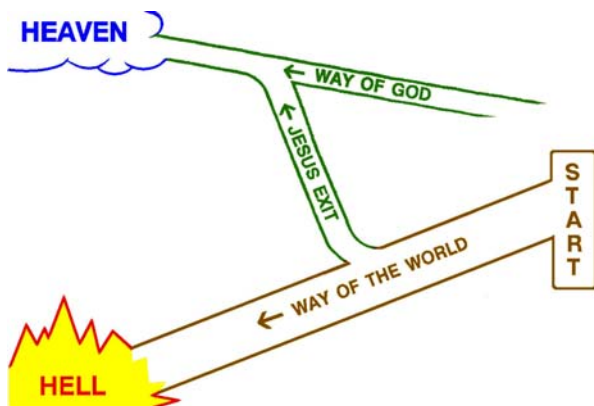
*John 5:14*

“14 Afterward Jesus findeth him in the temple, and said unto him, Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee.”

**“go, and sin no more”**

*John 8:11*

“11 She said, No man, Lord. And Jesus said unto her, Neither do I condemn thee: go, and sin no more.”



We may follow who ever we choose: God (*good*), or the devil (*sin, evil*). But we need to remember we are going to end up at the destination of the one we are following.

### **It seems strange**

It seems strange people think they are free, when they are under the dictate of sin. Sin tells them they are free: free to reject doing things that are good for them; free to harm others for their own gain; free to curse; free to put down other people; free to be deceptive, free to be mean and nasty; free to have unGodly sex; free to be evil; etc.

It seems strange people reject to be freed from sin's handcuffs. They reject the great liberty found in Jesus Christ: liberty (*freedom*) to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. They reject living their life in the good, holy, loving, clean, and Godly, side of life.

**Inside which camp do we choose to live:  
the evil camp of sin; or the good camp of Jesus Christ?  
Our choice determines our eternal residence.**

**Inside the evil camp  
of sin, lives**

- abortion
- adultery
- backbiting
- belittling
- bitterness
- child molesting
- covetousness
- cursing
- disobedience
- drunkenness
- evil music
- fornication
- getting even
- gossip
- hating people
- homosexuality
- idolatry
- immorality
- iniquity
- lasciviousness
- lust
- lying
- murders
- non-spouse sex
- pornography
- pride
- prostitution
- rapes
- ridiculing
- reviling
- rioting
- seductive dressing
- selfishness
- stealing
- vulgarity
- witchcraft
- etc.

**Inside the good camp  
of Jesus Christ, lives**

- access to God
- blessings of God
- caring
- clean conversations
- faithfulness
- forgiveness
- gentleness
- giving
- good works
- guidance by God
- healthy thinking
- helping
- holiness
- honesty
- hope
- hospitality
- humbleness of mind
- joy
- kindness
- liberty to obey God
- longsuffering
- love
- meekness
- mercy
- obedience
- patience
- peace
- purity
- rejoicing
- righteousness
- self control
- sharing
- temperance
- thankfulness
- truthfulness
- understanding
- etc.



Church leaders need to remember  
what happened to Eli the priest,  
because he did not end  
the wickedness in the house of God.

Are the things in our church being done God's way?

Choose the good/Godly  
life. Do not let sin destroy  
you.

I do not condemn anybody. I simply do not want anybody to go to the eternal lake of fire. When I talk about sinners going to the eternal lake of fire, I am saying "Wake up! Open your eyes! Turn around! You are going the wrong way! There is horrific danger ahead! You are walking towards the eternal lake of fire!" I want everybody to travel the Jesus exit and go to Heaven. It's an extremely superior place.

I believe the Bible teaches us not to condemn sinners; because that would make us, in a way, hypocrites; because every one of us have sinned. However, just because we do not condemn sinners is not going to keep sinners from going to the eternal lake of fire. To avoid the eternal lake of fire, sinners need to repent (*stop choosing to sin, and start striving to obey God*) and give themselves completely to Jesus Christ, to follow and obey him.

## 8

### Things do not seem to make sense

Throughout the Bible, we find God doing things in ways that are unusual and non-understandable to mankind. Before we believe something, we think we need to see it, detect it, or understand it. God wants us to believe what he proclaims, just because he/God proclaimed it, without signs or comprehension; it is called faith. When God does things in ways that are contrary to human logic and past our human ability to understand, he is able to test our faith, and hide Godly understanding from people who oppose him.

God gives understanding as a gift to people who truly love him, and genuinely desire to do his will. He blocks understanding from people who ignore and oppose him.

Just as a child who is lost in a crowd will recognize his mother's voice. God's children will also recognize the words from God. The Holy Ghost gives God's children Godly discernment.

**God hides things from the ungodly, until they believe.**

*Matthew 13:13*

“13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.”

**“the natural man receiveth not  
the things of the Spirit of God:  
for they are foolishness unto him:”**

*1 Corinthians 2:14*

“14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.”

**“thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent,  
and hast revealed them unto babes”**

*Luke 10:21-23*

“21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.

22 All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*.

23 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said privately, Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things that ye see:”

**“he cannot see”** (*cannot perceive*) *John 3:3*

“3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

**“lean not unto thine own understanding”** *Proverbs 3:5*

“5 Trust in the LORD with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding.”

**“God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise;”**

*1 Corinthians 1:27*

“27 But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty;”

Generally, Jews demand to see a sign from God, and the scientific crowd demand things to be comprehensible.

**“unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;”**

*1 Corinthians 1:22–23*

“22 For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom:

23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;”

**To whom does Christ reveal himself as the Messiah?**

**“and will manifest myself to him”** *John 14:21*

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

We need to have faith in God,  
and believe everything he proclaims,  
even if we cannot comprehend them.

# 9

## Doctrine Boxes

Doctrine boxes are built with doctrines, creeds, beliefs, etc. Denominations/churches create doctrine boxes to lock their beliefs in place. It is an attempt to keep their churches uniform, and to keep them from backsliding.

**THE PROBLEM** Being locked in place to stop and hinder backward movement also stops and hinders forward movement. If we are not careful, we can be inside a non-Biblical doctrine box, or a partly Biblical doctrine box, which can hinder us from going forward in God.

We need to stay inside doctrine boxes that are Biblically accurate; not all doctrine boxes are Biblically accurate. We may find some doctrine boxes that are largely constructed from non-Biblical intellect.

We find doctrine boxes which are made for confinement. Most denominations/churches require their preachers to stay within its doctrines, or they will lose their job.

The genuine doctrine box is  
the Holy Bible.

The whole Bible, in context,  
as interpreted by the Spirit of God.

### Being led by the Spirit of God is the key.

We cannot find our way in God, unless the Spirit of God guides us. We need the Spirit of God continually dwelling inside us, to give us Godly understanding and guidance.

A preacher who does not have God's Spirit inside him, leading him, is Spiritually blind. He will lead people into the Spiritual ditch every time, because he is leading with his intellect. Without the Spirit of God dwelling inside him, it is impossible for him to see the Spiritual road.

A preacher, or anyone who has the Spirit of God leading him, does not need any doctrine boxes, creeds, etc., other than the Holy Bible. The Spirit of God will keep him on the right track.

We may find ourselves inside a doctrine box of beliefs and supporting Scriptures. We could treat this doctrine box as a fort, fighting hard to defend it. We might even start fighting against, resisting, pushing away, and mentally blocking, other Bible verses that can appear to wound or kill our beliefs; we need to remember Bible is Bible. We need to diligently study and prayerfully scrutinize all the verses that can appear to give our Biblical beliefs problems. We need to prayerfully and Biblically examine our own Biblical doctrine boxes for imperfections.

We need to prayerfully re-examine our own beliefs, doctrines, creeds, etc., to see if they are truly Biblically correct.

# 10

## Missing Bible Verses

I am going to start this chapter by giving you an illustration. This illustration will show you how people can get into doctrine boxes that can hinder them from freely studying and considering all the Bible verses on equal ground.

**AN ILLUSTRATION STORY** Mrs. Smith had a little baby boy, and everyone was excited. He was so cute and adorable. They loved him and wanted to give him the very best. They decided to give him a good Bible name, so they named him “Isaiah.”

As he was growing up, his whole family regularly attended Sunday School, Sunday evening services, and Wednesday Night Bible Studies. In the summer he and his sister attended Vacation Bible School. By the time Isaiah graduated from High School, he had heard an enormous amount of teaching and preaching. Church was a big part of his life, and he loved it.

He decided to be a minister, and attended his denomination's seminary. After he graduated, he married the school's President's daughter. He started preaching, and soon moved up to one of the denomination's largest congregations.

The years passed quickly. Isaiah was now 50 years old, and had a good income. He had a son who was going to the same seminary he attended, and a daughter about to enter College. He knew just about every pastor in the denomination, and often ate with the denomination's leaders. All his friends, people he looked up to Spiritually, his family, his wife's family, and his children, all had strong beliefs and ties to the denomination.

Then one night there was a knock at the door. It was a member of his congregation, Harry Gordon. One of Harry's coworkers had challenged him about some of his denomination's beliefs. The coworker had given Harry Scriptures which seemed to indicate some of the denomination's beliefs were Biblically incorrect. This bothered Harry, so he brought these Scriptures to Isaiah to find out what was wrong.

Isaiah, with many years of Bible study, automatically realized Harry's coworker was Biblically correct. In all the years Isaiah studied the Bible, he just never put these verses together.

Isaiah was in a spot. If he told Harry his coworker was correct, it would spread through his whole congregation, and Isaiah would probably lose his job as pastor. If he told Harry his coworker was wrong, he would not be telling the truth. What was he going to do?

Isaiah knew if he presented it to the denomination's leaders, some would listen, but in the end they would tell him "We are not going to change the church's doctrines, because it would cause a major split in the denomination. If you are going to proclaim anything contrary to the denomination's doctrines, we will have to ask you for your resignation."

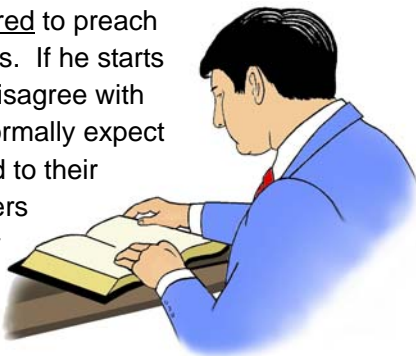
**EXAMPLE** If the denomination would change its doctrine about baptism, this could be seen as the denomination declaring they baptized people incorrectly for many years. This could overwhelm many of its members.

Isaiah's family and friends were all strongly connected to the denomination. If Isaiah held to what he had just learned, most of his family and friends would look down on him. He was 50 years old, and it would be hard for him to find another good paying job. This would mess up his children's education, etc.

Isaiah could avoid telling Harry his coworker was correct, without verbally lying, by saying "The denomination's viewpoint on this subject is \_\_\_\_\_", but this would be circumventing the truth. For a moment Isaiah did not know what to do. Then he remembered what God did to the priest Eli for not correcting things in the house of God.

---

A preacher is normally required to preach and teach their church's doctrines. If he starts preaching/teaching beliefs that disagree with his church's doctrines, he can normally expect to lose his job. Being handcuffed to their church's doctrines, most preachers do not feel the liberty to Biblically scrutinize their doctrines for errors.

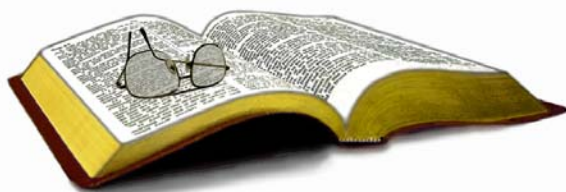


When we discuss differing beliefs with preachers, we need to remember their occupation is to preach and defend their church's doctrines. Most preachers will only proclaim their church's beliefs, and will automatically repel any belief or Bible verse that seems to be in conflict with their church's beliefs/doctrines.

We find many doctrinal disagreements among churches, and many of the doctrines oppose each other. Therefore, we know some doctrines are off center or off-base.

All churches/people need to prayerfully and diligently compare their doctrines to the whole Bible, continuously. Too many churches /people embrace their doctrines without prayerfully studying the verses that can appear to be in conflict with their beliefs; and they simply claim it is the other churches/people who are off center and off-base. Prayerful Spirit-led Bible research of all the Bible verses will confirm which doctrines/beliefs are correct.

When we follow our church's doctrines for many years, and we wholeheartedly believe they are Biblically correct, these beliefs can get welded into our innermost being. We can get to the point where it feels as if we are looking for errors in the truth, if we are searching for possible errors in our church's doctrines.



Searching for possible errors in our own doctrines/beliefs is acknowledging our understanding may not be absolutely perfect; it is acknowledging we still have room to grow in God. Searching for truth in the Bible is acknowledging the Bible is always truth, when interpreted correctly under the guidance of the Holy Ghost. Searching the Bible to find more pieces of the truth is acknowledging we do not know everything. Searching the Bible prayerfully is acknowledging we need God's help to show us the correct interpretation.



## Choosing not to study the Scriptures prayerfully

When people are shown Bible verses that appear to oppose their beliefs, most people will automatically defend their beliefs. They will brush off the Scriptures presented to them, without prayerfully studying them in depth. A belief based on four Bible verses might be challenged with eight Bible verses which seem to dissolve the belief. Even when faced with overwhelming evidence, we will probably hear the person say “I need more Biblical evidence before I will change my belief.” This is because we have been taught the same beliefs so often they are welded into our innermost being, making it difficult for us to change our thinking. It is not a choice between the four verses, and the eight verses; the perfect understanding will place all twelve verses in agreement.

All his life, Isaiah lived inside his denomination’s doctrine boxes. He knew these doctrines, and the verses used to support them, inside and out. But when he taught about errors in other churches’ doctrines, he was often off-base, because he did not truly understand what they believed.

Isaiah spent his whole lifetime learning the doctrines of his denomination. But he only spent thirty minutes reading in a book, written by a third party, to learn what the other church believes. Isaiah should have contacted the church directly, and had them explain what they believe, and why they believe it. Then he should have spent an ample amount of time prayerfully studying the Bible verses the other church uses to support their beliefs.

In this book, I attempt to stir you to prayerfully study the rest of the Bible: the unfamiliar parts; the parts we have not focused on. We need to know what we are missing. We always need to learn and grow deeper into God.

This book centers on the main instructions for joining Jesus Christ. They were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church. All the apostles stood with St. Peter as he gave these instructions (*Acts 2:38*). These instructions apply to us.

Why do churches need to revise their doctrines, when they learn their doctrines are not totally Biblically correct? — Souls may be in jeopardy.

How to Join Jesus Christ is only one of many Biblical topics in which we can find Missing Bible Verses.

### **How many new pieces of Biblical understanding did we learn from reading this book?**

✓ Check the boxes.

- ☐ People can construct beliefs/doctrines which are out of context by selecting verses they desire, and ignoring other verses.
- ☐ Many people will follow the ways of the world to their own destruction, and few people will strive (*an intense level of seeking*) to find the door (*Jesus Christ*) and follow him up the strait and narrow way to Heaven.
- ☐ “Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ” includes a firm decision to follow him, doing all the things of Biblical Christianity. It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ while we continue to ignore his commandments.
- ☐ Joining, converting to, putting on, Jesus Christ includes the following: **(1)** Repenting; **(2)** Being immersed in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of sins; **(3)** Being filled with the Spirit of God.

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”  
(Acts 2:38)

- ☐ Acts 2:38 contains the instructions for joining Jesus Christ. These instructions were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church, and these instructions still pertain to everyone. The joining instructions are symbolic of Christ’s death, burial, and resurrection.
- ☐ We need to prayerfully, continually, and diligently, strive to find and do the will of God, as he molds us into righteousness.
- ☐ Repentance is more than expressing sorrow for our sins, and asking God to forgive us. It is a firm and true decision to turn our life’s direction from following the path of sin to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. It is making Jesus Christ the Lord/director/navigator of our life.

- ❑ We need to put God first, above everyone and everything.
- ❑ How many separate Deity/God individuals exist?

**“I am the LORD, and *there is none else, there is no God beside me:*”**

*Isaiah 45:5–6*

“5 ¶ I am the LORD, and *there is none else, there is no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:*

6 That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that *there is none beside me. I am the LORD, and there is none else.*”

**“the LORD he is God; there is none else beside him”**

*Deuteronomy 4:35*

“35 Unto thee it was shewed, that thou mightest know that the LORD he is God; *there is none else beside him.*”

**“beside me *there is no saviour.*”**

**“that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me”**

*Isaiah 43:10–11*

“10 Ye *are* my witnesses, saith the LORD, and my servant whom I have chosen: that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I *am* he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.

11 I, *even I, am* the LORD; and beside me *there is no saviour.*”

**“for there is one God; and there is none other but he:”**

*Mark 12:32–34*

“32 And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is none other but he:

33 And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love *his* neighbour as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.

34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him *any question.*”

**“Thou believest that there is one God;  
thou doest well:”**

*James 2:19*

“19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.”

- ❑ The Bible talks about one God: the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.
- ❑ Biblical consistency informs us we are to be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ.” Baptizing in the descriptive names of God (*Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*) comes from an interpretation of one verse, and the desire to include everyone. Is there an everyone, since we only have one God?

**Is Jesus Christ God (*the God of Abraham*),  
or is he another God/Deity individual who is with God?**

How many separate God/Deity beings exist, one or three?  
The Bible repeatedly declares there is only one God.

Unlike humans, I believe God has the ability to be in multiple forms/manifestations, and presents himself to mankind as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

***Jesus Christ is God.***

**“ye are complete in him”**

*Colossians 2:9–10*

“9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.

10 And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:”

When we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, we are being baptized into the entire one God. It is following Biblical consistency. The people in the Bible were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

**“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”**

*Acts 8:16*

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

**“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”**

*Acts 19:5*

“5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

**“be baptized every one of you  
in the name of Jesus Christ”**

*Acts 2:38*

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

**“been baptized into Christ”**

*Galatians 3:27*

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

**“were baptized into Jesus Christ”**

*Romans 6:3*

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?”

**“he commanded them to be baptized  
in the name of the Lord”**

*Acts 10:48*

“48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

**“do all in the name of the Lord Jesus”**

*Colossians 3:17*

“17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.”

- ❑ Jesus Christ instructs us to be baptized.
- ❑ St. Paul re-baptized people in the name of the **“Lord Jesus”**: people who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist baptism. He baptized them into Jesus Christ.
- ❑ Water baptism wears the Biblical tag **“for the remission of sins”**. If we genuinely repent and are genuinely baptized into Christ, our sins are forgiven.
- ❑ The word *baptize* was never translated into English. It is an everyday Greek word which means to dip/immerse.
- ❑ Being immersed in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of our sins, after we have believed on the Lord Jesus Christ and repented, can be Biblically confirmed as being baptized into Jesus Christ.

❑ After the midnight earthquake, Paul and Silas spoke the word of the Lord to the jailor and his household. They were baptized immediately; they did not wait until morning!

❑ “14 For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you:

15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.”  
(Matthew 6:14–15)

❑ We cannot see/find God, unless he reveals himself to us.

**“and will manifest myself to him”**

John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

❑ God enters and continually lives inside all genuine born again Christians: to teach; to guide; and to comfort us. Following the leading of the Holy Ghost, who lives inside every genuine Christian, and having the fruit of the Spirit in our lives, identifies us as a genuine believer. All of Christ’s sheep follow him (*obey him*).

❑ We cannot comprehend the truths about God, and the Spiritual world, unless the Spirit of God reveals them to us. When we study the Bible, we cannot truly understand anything past the first layer (*history, laws, events, etc.*), unless God allows us to understand it.

❑ Romans 8:9

**“if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”**

“9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

❑ When we study the Biblical accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost (*being baptized with the Holy Ghost*), we find a repeated Biblical pattern, the recipients spoke in tongues.

**“and began to speak with other tongues”**

Acts 2:4

“4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

**“which ye now see and hear”**

Acts 2:33

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

**“they heard them speak with tongues”**

Acts 10:46–47

“46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,

47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?”

**“they spake with tongues”**

Acts 19:5–6

“5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

- ❑ *Tarrying for the Holy Ghost* is drawing nigh to God. It is totally giving ourselves to Jesus Christ: putting him first in our life; obeying him; worshiping him in Spirit and in truth; telling him how much we love and appreciate him; etc.
- ❑ Speaking and singing praises directly to Jesus Christ is a very important part of following him.
- ❑ Obedience to Christ’s commandments, good works, morality, Godliness, holiness, righteousness, love, gentleness, patience, etc., has nothing to do with earning our way into Heaven. Why? Our admission into Heaven cannot be earned. However, these things are always a part of every genuine born again Christian’s life. The Spirit of God dwells inside every genuine born again Christian, and God’s Spirit always molds them into these things. If we are not growing into these things, we have not properly believed on Jesus Christ yet.

Jesus Christ paid the full price for our salvation, when he died on the cross. We can make Heaven our eternal home by believing on him, by accepting him as our **Lord** (as the one we obey) and Saviour. Our first instructions are to repent and be baptized into Jesus Christ.

- ❑ We cannot obtain partial grace. We cannot accept the grace of God to forgive our sins, and reject the grace of God that cleans and molds us into Godly vessels.
- ❑ We are not accepted into the family of God because we made ourselves clean. It is impossible to cleanse ourselves, or earn our admission into Heaven. After we have obeyed Acts 2:38, including receiving the Holy Ghost, God will cleanse and mold us into righteous people as we cooperate with him.

“14 Who gave himself for us,  
that he might redeem us from all iniquity,  
and purify unto himself a peculiar people,  
zealous of good works.” *Titus 2:14*

We can continually learn things from the Bible all our life, and still only see the tip of the iceberg. Churches and people need to continually study the entire Bible, endlessly; we do not know everything.

We have talked about the need for us to accept Christ as our **Lord**, and to follow him. Another part of the picture is

**“Ye have not chosen me,  
but I have chosen you,”**

*John 15:16*

“16 Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.”

I believe the Bible can be used to support false beliefs, and condemn correct beliefs, by using verses and words out of context. It seems if a person does not want to believe a correct belief, he can come up with verses and words in the Bible to convince himself the belief is incorrect. If a person wants to believe a false belief, it seems he can come up with verses and words in the Bible to convince himself the belief is Biblically correct. We need to be extremely careful not to use Bible verses and words out of context. We need the Holy Ghost living inside us to discern what is in and out of context.



A main problem is people/churches have a tendency to travel the same Bible verses, repeatedly, until our Biblical focus is frozen to them. This can make it difficult for us to see and accept other Bible verses that can question our beliefs. We must not mentally repress, block, deflect, or discard, Scriptures that can appear contrary to our beliefs; it is possible some of our beliefs are not squarely on base. This is the reason we need to prayerfully, seriously, and intensely, study the whole Bible, including the verses that seem to disagree with our beliefs.

If we want truth, we must stay inside the Holy Bible. The entire Bible is truth; errors are mis-interpretations. If we have the perfect understanding, all the Scriptures will be in harmony.

It is very important for us to read the whole Bible every year.

**ILLUSTRATION** Joe opened his Bible and pointed to the word *predestinated*. He wanted Carl to see the word *predestinated* is in the Bible, and the Bible is always truth. Then Joe explained to Carl all about predestination. The problem was Joe's explanation about *predestination* was not built from Bible verses; his explanation came from his personal thoughts, what he was taught, and his personal understanding. We need to be careful, and see where Bible facts end and personal thoughts and opinions take over. The correct explanations will always be in harmony with the whole Bible.

Some people were told about being baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ," receiving the Holy Ghost, speaking in tongues, etc. When they heard it, they were totally convinced these things were off-base. They pulled out their Bible, and they set forth to find the errors of these unusual teachings.



They searched the Holy Bible with a right heart, and they ran into a problem. Instead of finding Scriptures to reveal errors, they kept finding additional Scriptures to support these beliefs. In the end they established these beliefs were Biblically correct.

This book emphasizes the need for us to personally examine our beliefs. Get your Bible and your **exhaustive** concordance, and prayerfully examine the Bible. Start by seeing if you can find any **Missing Bible Verses** on the topics in this book. If you find any missing Bible verses, please send them to me. Thank you.

Be sure to make yourself a paper visual; this can be a real eye opener. List everything you can find on different pieces of paper:

**First sheet of paper** List every Bible verse for the belief that gives us a solid fact (*Does not need a conclusion/assumption*).

**Second sheet of paper** List the verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses.

**Third sheet of paper** List the verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from one Bible verse. (*When a belief comes from only one Bible verse, the belief cannot be crossed checked [confirmed] with other Bible verses.*)

**Fourth sheet of paper** List every Bible verse that can appear to be in opposition, or gives the belief problems.

**Fifth sheet of paper** List every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support. Be sure to label this paper “No Biblical Support.”

After you have made these lists, be sure to circle everything that is an explanation. People can give their own personal explanation of what individual words and phrases in the Bible mean. These explanations can be right, half right, or totally wrong.

After you have Biblically checked out this book using your **exhaustive** concordance, do the same for your own beliefs.

**REMEMBER** Favorable Bible verses do not cross-out, eradicate, or eliminate undesirable Bible verses. When Bible verses seem to contradict each other, neither verse may be eliminated or ignored.

**May God bless you in your prayerful research.**

If you wish to ask questions, or send comments,

**Please Email Me**

**SendPDF@seeketh.com**

Additional PDF Articles  
May be Downloaded from

<https://seeketh.com/>

**MISSING BIBLE VERSES, Missing from Common Beliefs,  
by Frederick C. Rauch**

Copyright © 2004 – 2022 by Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors.  
All rights reserved.

**Non-Commercial Non-Profit reproductions of this book**

I wrote my book for the glory of God, not for profit. I wrote it to be reproduced for and by everyone. My goal is to give my book to as many people as possible, stirring them to prayerfully study the Bible for themselves.

I greatly encourage people to make non-profit non-commercial copies of my book, and give it to others. This should stimulate their drive to prayerfully study the Bible and grow in God. Please put forth an effort to forward my book to other people, but do it in a legal, honest, and upright, way (*no spam, etc.*)

I encourage people to study my book, as individuals and groups, cross-examining it with the whole Bible. This would be an interesting subject to study in Sunday School.

I encourage Bible Seminars/Collages/etc. to get their students to cross-examine it with the whole Bible. Teachers and preachers need to be prepared for teaching and preaching God's word, they need to know what other churches truly believe, and why they believe it. Studying new things in the Bible will always cause us to grow in God.

My book is not public domain, but making copies of it, and passing it unto others, is permitted and greatly encouraged. Please do it.

If you do anything with my book, you are required to do it in a legal way.

If you are in the UK (United Kingdom), my understanding is the Crown holds the copyright to the Authorized Version text (King James Version). You might (?) need their permission to legally reproduce the Bible text: parts of the Bible text are used in this book. Check it out. My understanding is the copyright applies only to the UK (United Kingdom), and not to the rest of the world.

You may make unaltered copies of this PDF file, and give them to others.

I made some special PDF files of my book, to make it easier to reproduce it correctly. These special files may be a better match for your printer's/program's capabilities, resulting in a greatly

improved printed copy. These files may be copied, but not altered.

You may print on paper non-commercial non-profit copies of my book, in whole or in part, as long as they are printed without any alterations, and the copyright page is fastened to everything that is printed (*the copyright page is in the front of the book*). For best results, print from the PDF file, currently a free download at <https://seeketh.com/>

My book is not copyrighted © for the purpose of banning or hindering non-commercial non-profit reproductions of it. However, you are not allowed to alter my book.

You are not allowed to take things from my book and use them in other things/works; I am not talking about my words. The copyright page must be attached to everything that is reproduced: this is for legal reasons.

You may fix obvious typing mistakes in my book, but the Bible text (*including the italics*) must match the Bible. Punctuation that is outside quotes is not a typing mistake.

I currently have my book in the PDF format. As time moves along, things change. You have my permission to move my book into the newer formats, modes, etc., for reading books, as long as it is done in a way that is legal, honest, upright, and protects all copyrighted things; and the book remains unchanged, including the italicized words of the Bible text remaining in italic. You must also add the following to the copyright page: Converted into the new format name by your name. Example: "Converted into RTF by Joan Smith."

You may translate the words in my book into a different language, as long as it is a faithful translation. However, you must change the title to: your name's translation of: *Missing Bible Verses, Missing from Common Beliefs*, by *Frederick C. Rauch*, into new language. Example:

"John Gilbert's translation of:  
*Missing Bible Verses,*  
*Missing from Common Beliefs,*  
*by Frederick C. Rauch,*  
into French"

If you do not want to use your name, use the word  
*Anonymous*' (example: "*Anonymous*' translation of: ...").

The translated book needs to be a copyrighted as a non-commercial non-profit book to be shared freely with everyone, hopefully given to everyone as a free download (*or the download equivalent in future technology*), with free non-commercial non-profit reproduction rights for everyone.

You may make an audio reproduction of my book , as long as it is a faithful reading. However, you must change the title to: *your name* 's reading of: *Missing Bible Verses, Missing from Common Beliefs, by Frederick C. Rauch*. Example:

“Tom Edward’s reading of:  
*Missing Bible Verses,  
Missing from Common Beliefs,  
by Frederick C. Rauch*”

If you do not want to use your name, use the word  
*Anonymous*’ (example: “*Anonymous*’ reading of: ...”).

You may make a video reproduction of my book, as long as it is a faithful reproduction. However, you must change the title to: *your name* 's video of: *Missing Bible Verses, Missing from Common Beliefs, by Frederick C. Rauch*. Example:

“Sally Smith’s video of:  
*Missing Bible Verses,  
Missing from Common Beliefs,  
by Frederick C. Rauch*”

If you do not want to use your name, use the word  
*Anonymous*’ (example: “*Anonymous*’ video of: ...”).

If you make a translation, video, etc., it is smart to check things out with your lawyer; you might need the rights to use some third party items. When you are putting anything together, you might use or insert some third party items without knowing it.

### **Commercial reproduction of this book, in any form**

When things get outside the non-commercial non-profit reproductions of my book, things change. You are free to use my words, as long as they are unaltered. But there are other things you might need to do, and have the rights to, to keep things legal. Please contact me. I want everything kept legal. Check things out with your lawyer. You may not sell reproductions of this PDF file.

It is smart to scan this file for unwanted and malicious things, because it may have traveled through many computers, etc. You never know, it might have picked up something along the way.

## **Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer**

The *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer* is referencing this PDF file.

I try to keep this PDF file clean and problem free. But computers and software are not error/problem free. Once in a while something goes wrong. If by chance something goes wrong from using this file and/or stems from using this file, it is your problem and expense. By using this file, you are accepting the total risk for anything going wrong. If something goes wrong, you are accepting the full responsibility and liability.

The person, organization, church, etc., whoever uses this file in any way, hereafter, in this *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer* document, is referred to as “you”.

With the exception of the Bible text (the rights in which are vested in the Crown), everything in this PDF file, including, but not limited to, all text content, all data, all code/codes, all artwork, all logos, all trademarks, all fonts, are Copyrighted by Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors, all rights reserved. Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors retain all rights of ownership, including, but not limited to, property rights, title, intellectual property rights, all text, all content, all data, all code/codes, all artwork, all logos, all trademarks, all fonts, to everything in this PDF file, except the Bible text (the rights in which are vested in the Crown).

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of the file, you are accepting the complete file **as is**. There are absolutely no guarantees, no warranties, that this PDF file is free from viruses and/or other hazardous things and/or malicious things and/or code/codes, which might directly and/or indirectly cause ill and/or unwanted results, great or small, incidental or consequential, to a computer/computers and/or other electronic devices, including, but

not limited to, their software, their hardware, their folders, their files, and/or anything connected to a computer or other device. By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are accepting all of the risks.

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, you are agreeing to defend, indemnify, and hold Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors innocent/harmless, free from all claims and/or payments for losses and/or injuries, including, but not limited to, expenses, expenses from losses and/or injuries, lawyer fees, lawsuits, and from any and all liability and expenses of every kind, which might arise. By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are legally agreeing to completely accept all risks of every kind connected to this PDF file. By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are legally accepting all the risks and all responsibility and all liability for any and all ill/unwanted results, which might result from using this file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, and/or stem from contact with this PDF file.

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are accepting and agreeing to follow all the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to legally accept all risks, all responsibility, and all liability, for any and all ill/unwanted results which might result from using, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, and/or stem from using this PDF file, and/or stem from contact with this PDF file, you may not use, have a copy of, or do anything with, this PDF file. If you do not agree to accept and follow all the terms of this agreement, you may not use, have a copy of, or do anything with, this PDF file.



By accepting the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*, you may do two things; but before doing any of them, check the laws of the country in which you are located to see if you are allowed to do them. You are the one responsible for obeying the laws.

If you are in the UK (United Kingdom), my understanding is the Crown holds the copyright to the Authorized Version text (King James Version). You might (?) need their permission to legally reproduce the Bible text: parts of the Bible text are used in this PDF file. Check it out. My understanding is the copyright applies only to the UK (United Kingdom), and not to the rest of the world. If you accept the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*, you may do the following:

- (1) Make non-commercial non-profit copies of this PDF file, **as long as it is:**
  - (a) Copied in whole (*totally everything*) without any alterations, including all copyright notices, including the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*.
- (2) Print on paper non-commercial non-profit copies of this PDF document file, in whole or in part, **as long as:**
  - (a) They are printed without any alterations;
  - (b) The copyright page is fastened to anything and everything, whole or in part, that is printed;
  - (c) All copies retain the italicized words of the Bible in italic.

The “*Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*”, and “Printing Comments”, (*the pages with the yellow stripes*) do not have to be printed in the paper copies of my book; these things do not pertain to the paper copies. However, the copyright page must be fastened to all paper copies.

## Printing Comments

Currently, many computer printers/programs have some undesired limitations. Many printers/programs automatically change things, and sometimes produce undesirable results. Sometimes there is no way of bypassing these automatic changes.

**One Example** My book is formatted for a half sheet of paper, so when a letter size piece of paper [8 1/2 x 11 inches] is folded, I have a left and right page. When the page is half-size, the margins need to be half size to make it look right. When I tell my printer to print the document as a booklet, it automatically enlarges the margins, and reduces the text size down to tiny. These automatic changes give it an unacceptable appearance, and tiny text which is almost unreadable. Apparently, there is no way to bypass these automated changes, and print my document as a booklet, and retain my document's formatting for the margins, using my printer and program.

There can be many problems in printing my book correctly, depending on your printers and programs. I put to-gether some special PDF files, which will allow you to print my book correctly.

Most printers allow you to print an unaltered letter size (8 1/2 x 11 inches) document; you may have to select something like "print actual size", "use the document's settings", etc. If you print from these special PDF files as a letter size document (8 1/2 x 11 inches), landscape, my book should print correctly.

**May God Bless You!**